TEI Lite: Encoding for Interchange: an introduction to the TEI
Final revised edition for TEI P5
Lou Burnard  C. M. Sperberg-McQueen  August 2012
Prefatory note

TEI Lite was the name adopted for what the TEI editors originally conceived of as a simple demonstration of how the TEI (Text Encoding Initiative) encoding scheme might be adopted to meet 90% of the needs of 90% of the TEI user community. In retrospect, it was predictable that many people should imagine TEI Lite to be all there is to TEI, or find TEI Lite to be far too heavy for their needs.

The original TEI Lite (1996) was based largely on observations of existing and previous practice in the encoding of texts, particularly as manifest in the collections of the Oxford Text Archive and other collections of the period. It is therefore unsurprising that it seems to have become, if not a de facto standard, at least a common point of departure for electronic text centres and encoding projects world wide. Maybe the fact that we actually produced this shortish, readable, manual for it also helped.

Early adopters of TEI Lite included a number of Electronic Text Centers and digital library initiatives. It was also adopted as the basis for some early TEI-conformant authoring systems, and as the basis for introductory tutorials, many of them in languages other than English (see further the list of legacy versions at http://www.tei-c.org/Vault/P4/Lite/).

In 2002, following the publication of TEI P4, the XML version of the TEI Guidelines, which uses the generation of TEI Lite as an example of the TEI modification mechanism, the opportunity was taken to produce a lightly revised XML-conformant version. In 2006, a more substantially revised version based on TEI P5 was produced; this reflected the many changes between TEI P4 and TEI P5, but was not otherwise significantly different. In 2012, the TEI Technical Council, decided that a final revision should be undertaken to ensure that the documentation remained consistent with the latest (2.1) release of TEI P5. This version uses a recently added mechanism in the TEI customization architecture, which permits a customization to define only the TEI elements to be included in a schema, rather than the elements to be excluded from it. As such it is probably more resilient to change than earlier versions.

Lou Burnard, August 2012
This document provides an introduction to the recommendations of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI), by describing a specific subset of the full TEI encoding scheme. The scheme documented here can be used to encode a wide variety of commonly encountered textual features, in such a way as to maximize the usability of electronic transcriptions and to facilitate their interchange among scholars using different computer systems. It is fully compatible with the full TEI scheme, as defined by TEI document P5, Guidelines for Electronic Text Encoding and Interchange, as of February 2006, and available from the TEI Consortium website at http://www.tei-c.org/.

1 Introduction

The Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines are addressed to anyone who wants to interchange information stored in an electronic form. They emphasize the interchange of textual information, but other forms of information such as images and sound are also addressed. The Guidelines are equally applicable in the creation of new resources and in the interchange of existing ones.

The Guidelines provide a means of making explicit certain features of a text in such a way as to aid the processing of that text by computer software running on different machines. This process of making explicit we call markup or encoding. Any textual representation on a computer uses some form of markup; the TEI came into being partly because of the enormous variety of mutually incomprehensible encoding schemes currently besetting scholarship, and partly because of the expanding range of scholarly uses now being identified for texts in electronic form.

The TEI Guidelines describe an encoding scheme which can be expressed using a number of different formal languages. The first editions of the Guidelines used the Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML); since 2002, this has been replaced by the use of the Extensible Markup Language (XML). These markup languages have in common the definition of text in terms of elements and attributes, and rules governing their appearance within a text. The TEI’s use of XML is ambitious in its complexity and generality, but it is fundamentally no different from that of any other XML markup scheme, and so any general-purpose XML-aware software is able to process TEI-conformant texts.

Since 2001, the TEI has been a community initiative supported by an international membership consortium. It was originally an international research project sponsored by the Association for Computers and the Humanities, the Association for Computational Linguistics, and the Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing, with substantial funding over its first five years from the U.S. National Endowment for the Humanities, Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities, the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation, the Social Science and Humanities Research Council of Canada and others. The Guidelines were first published in May 1994, after six years of development involving many hundreds of scholars from different academic disciplines worldwide. During the years that followed, the Guidelines became increasingly influential in the development of the digital library, in the language industries, and even in the development of the World Wide Web itself. The TEI Consortium was set up in January 2001, and a year later produced an edition of the Guidelines entirely revised for XML compatibility. In 2004, it set about a major revision of the Guidelines to take full advantage of new schema languages, the first release of which appeared in 2005. This revision of the TEI Lite document conforms to version 2.1 of this most recent edition of the Guidelines, TEI P5, released in June 2012.

At the outset of its work, the overall goals of the TEI were defined by the closing statement of a planning conference held at Vassar College, N.Y., in November, 1987; these Poughkeepsie Principles were further elaborated in a series of design documents. The Guidelines, say these design documents, should:

- suffice to represent the textual features needed for research;
1 INTRODUCTION

- be simple, clear, and concrete;
- be easy for researchers to use without special-purpose software;
- allow the rigorous definition and efficient processing of texts;
- provide for user-defined extensions;
- conform to existing and emergent standards.

The world of scholarship is large and diverse. For the Guidelines to have wide acceptability, it was important to ensure that:

1. the common core of textual features be easily shared;
2. additional specialist features be easy to add to (or remove from) a text;
3. multiple parallel encodings of the same feature should be possible;
4. the richness of markup should be user-defined, with a very small minimal requirement;
5. adequate documentation of the text and its encoding should be provided.

The present document describes a manageable selection from the extensive set of elements and recommendations resulting from those design goals, which is called TEI Lite.

In selecting from the several hundred elements defined by the full TEI scheme, we have tried to identify a useful starter set, comprising the elements which almost every user should know about. Experience working with TEI Lite will be invaluable in understanding the full TEI scheme and in knowing how to integrate specialized parts of it into the general TEI framework.

Our goals in defining this subset may be summarized as follows:

- it should be able to handle adequately a reasonably wide variety of texts, at the level of detail found in existing practice (as demonstrated in, for example, the holdings of the Oxford Text Archive);
- it should be useful for the production of new documents (such as this one) as well as the encoding of existing texts;
- it should be usable with a wide range of existing XML software;
- it should be a pure subset of the full TEI scheme and defined using the customizaton methods described in the TEI Guidelines;
- it should be as small and simple as is consistent with the other goals.

The reader may judge our success in meeting these goals for him or herself.

Although we have tried to make this document self-contained, as suits a tutorial text, the reader should be aware that it does not cover every detail of the TEI encoding scheme. All of the elements described here are fully documented in the TEI Guidelines themselves, which should be consulted for authoritative reference information on these, and on the many others which are not described here. Some basic knowledge of XML is assumed.
2 A Short Example

We begin with a short example, intended to show what happens when a passage of prose is typed into a computer by someone with little sense of the purpose of mark-up, or the potential of electronic texts. In an ideal world, such output might be generated by a very accurate optical scanner. It attempts to be faithful to the appearance of the printed text, by retaining the original line breaks, by introducing blanks to represent the layout of the original headings and page breaks, and so forth. Where characters not available on the keyboard are needed (such as the accented letter a in faàl or the long dash), it attempts to mimic their appearance.

CHAPTER 38

READER, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said --

'Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.' The housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air, and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only --

'Have you, miss? Well, for sure!'

A short time after she pursued, 'I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed'; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to ear.

'I telled Mary how it would be,' he said: 'I knew what Mr Edward' (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian name) -- 'I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I wish you joy, miss!' and he politely pulled his forelock.

'Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.'

I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words --

'She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.' And again, 'If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faa\l, and varry good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see that.'

I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done; fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.

'She had better not wait till then, Jane,' said Mr Rochester, when I read her letter to him; 'if she does, she will be too late, for our honey-moon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your grave or mine.'
How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspondence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.

This transcription suffers from a number of shortcomings:

- the page numbers and running titles are intermingled with the text in a way which makes it difficult for software to disentangle them;
- no distinction is made between single quotation marks and apostrophe, so it is difficult to know exactly which passages are in direct speech;
- the preservation of the copy text’s hyphenation means that simple-minded search programs will not find the broken words;
- the accented letter in faâl and the long dash have been rendered by ad hoc keying conventions which follow no standard pattern and will be processed correctly only if the transcriber remembers to mention them in the documentation;
- paragraph divisions are marked only by the use of white space, and hard carriage returns have been introduced at the end of each line. Consequently, if the size of type used to print the text changes, reformatting will be problematic.

We now present the same passage, as it might be encoded using the TEI Guidelines. As we shall see, there are many ways in which this encoding could be extended, but as a minimum, the TEI approach allows us to represent the following distinctions:

- Paragraph and chapter divisions are now marked explicitly.
- Apostrophes are distinguished from quotation marks; direct speech is explicitly marked.
- The accented letter and the long dash are correctly represented.
- Page divisions have been marked with an empty `<pb/>` element alone.
- The lineation of the original has not been retained and words broken by typographic accident at the end of a line have been re-assembled without comment.
- For convenience of proof reading, a new line has been introduced at the start of each paragraph, but the indentation is removed.

```xml
<pb n="474"/>
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p>Reader, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said --</p>
  <q>Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.</q> The housekeeper and her
</div>
```
husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any
time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having one's ears
pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy
wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting
a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang sus-
pended in air,
and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing
process; but
Mary, bending again over the roast, said only —

Have you, miss? Well, for sure!

A short time after she pursued, I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know
you were gone to church to be wed; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him, was
grinning from ear to ear. I telled Mary how it would be, he said: I knew what Mr
Edward (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he was the cadet of the
house, therefore he often gave him his Christian name) — I knew what Mr Edward would do;
and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I
wish you joy, miss! and he politely pulled his forelock.

Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.

I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the
kitchen.

In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words —
She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies. And again,
If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faàl, and varry good-natured; and i' his een she's
fair beautiful, onybody may see that.

I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done:
fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and Mary approved the step
unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the
honeymoon,
and then she would come and see me.

She had better not wait till then, Jane, said Mr Rochester, when I read her letter
to him; if she does, she will be too late, for our honeymoon will shine our life long:
it's beams will only fade over your grave or mine.

How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered the letter in
which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however, mention-
ing Mr Rochester's name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and
though very serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspondence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.</p>

This particular encoding represents a set of choices or priorities. As a trivial example, note that in the second example, end-of-line hyphenation has been silently removed. Conceivably Brontë (or her printer) intended the word honeymoon to appear as honey-moon on its second appearance, though this seems unlikely: our decision to focus on Brontë’s text, rather than on the printing of it in this particular edition, makes it impossible to be certain. This is an instance of the fundamental selectivity of any encoding. An encoding makes explicit only those textual features of importance to the encoder. It is not difficult to think of ways in which the encoding of even this short passage might readily be extended. For example:

- a regularized form of the passages in dialect could be provided;
- footnotes glossing or commenting on any passage could be added;
- pointers linking parts of this text to others could be added;
- proper names of various kinds could be distinguished from the surrounding text;
- detailed bibliographic information about the text’s provenance and context could be prefixed to it;
- a linguistic analysis of the passage into sentences, clauses, words, etc., could be provided, each unit being associated with appropriate category codes;
- the text could be segmented into narrative or discourse units;
- systematic analysis or interpretation of the text could be included in the encoding, with potentially complex alignment or linkage between the text and the analysis, or between the text and one or more translations of it;
- passages in the text could be linked to images or sound held on other media.

TEI-recommended ways of carrying out most of these are described in the remainder of this document. The TEI scheme as a whole also provides for an enormous range of other possibilities, of which we cite only a few:

- detailed analysis of the components of names;
- detailed meta-information providing thesaurus-style information about the text’s origins or topics;
- information about the printing history or manuscript variations exhibited by a particular series of versions of the text.

For recommendations on these and many other possibilities, the full Guidelines should be consulted.
3 The Structure of a TEI Text

All TEI-conformant texts contain (a) a TEI header (marked up as a `<teiHeader>` element) and (b) the transcription of the text proper (marked up as a `<text>` element). These two elements are combined together to form a single `<TEI>` element, which must be declared within the TEI namespace.

The TEI header provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of a printed text. It has up to four parts: a bibliographic description of the machine-readable text, a description of the way it has been encoded, a non-bibliographic description of the text (a text profile), and a revision history. The header is described in more detail in section 19. The Electronic Title Page.

A TEI text may be unitary (a single work) or composite (a collection of single works, such as an anthology). In either case, the text may have an optional front or back. In between is the body of the text, which, in the case of a composite text, may consist of groups, each containing more groups or texts.

A unitary text will be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```xml
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- [ TEI Header information ] -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
      <!-- [ front matter ... ] -->
    </front>
    <body>
      <!-- [ body of text ... ] -->
    </body>
    <back>
      <!-- [ back matter ... ] -->
    </back>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

A composite text also has an optional front and back. In between occur one or more groups of texts, each with its own optional front and back matter. A composite text will thus be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```xml
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- [ header information for the composite ] -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
      <!-- [ front matter for the composite ] -->
    </front>
    <group>
      <text>
        <front>
          <!-- [ front matter of first text ] -->
        </front>
        <body>
          <!-- [ body of first text ] -->
        </body>
      </text>
    </group>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

1 A namespace is an XML concept. Its function is to identify the vocabulary from which a group of element names are drawn, using a standard identifier resembling a web address. The namespace for all TEI elements is `http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0`
It is also possible to define a composite of complete TEI texts, each with its own header. Such a collection is known as a *TEI corpus*, and may itself have a header:

```
<teiCorpus xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!--[header information for the corpus]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!--[header information for first text]-->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!--[first text in corpus]-->
    </text>
  </TEI>
  <teiHeader>
    <!--[header information for second text]-->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <!--[second text in corpus]-->
  </text>
</teiCorpus>
```

It is also possible to create a composite of corpora – that is, one `teiCorpus` element may contain many nested `teiCorpus` elements rather than many nested `<TEI>` elements, to any depth considered necessary.

In the remainder of this document, we discuss chiefly simple text structures. The discussion in each case consists of a short list of relevant TEI elements with a brief definition of each, followed by definitions for any *attributes* specific to that element, and a reference to any *classes* of which the element is a member. These references are linked to full specifications for each object, as given in the TEI *Guidelines*. In most cases, short examples are also given.

For example, here are the elements discussed so far:
<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element.

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page for every TEI-conformant document.

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

<teiCorpus> contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

4 Encoding the Body

As indicated above, a simple TEI document at the textual level consists of the following elements:

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Elements specific to front and back matter are described below in section 18. Front and Back Matter. In this section we discuss the elements making up the body of a text.

4.1 Text Division Elements

The body of a prose text may be just a series of paragraphs, or these paragraphs may be grouped together into chapters, sections, subsections, etc. Each paragraph is tagged using the <p> tag. The <div> element is used to represent any such grouping of paragraphs.

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

The type attribute on the <div> element may be used to supply a conventional name for this category of text division, or otherwise distinguish them. Typical values might be book, chapter, section, part, poem, song, etc. For a given project, it will usually be advisable to define and adhere to a specific list of such values.

A <div> element may itself contain further, nested, <div>s, thus mimicking the traditional structure of a book, which can be decomposed hierarchically into units such as parts, containing chapters, containing sections, and so on. TEI texts in general conform to this simple hierarchic model.

The xml:id attribute may be used to supply a unique identifier for the division, which may be used for cross references or other links to it, such as a commentary, as further discussed in section 8. Cross References and Links. It is often useful to provide an xml:id attribute for every major structural unit in a text, and to derive its values in some systematic way, for example by appending a section number to a short code for the title of the work in question, as in the examples below. It is particularly useful to supply such identifiers if the resource concerned is to be made available over the web, since they make it much easier for other web-based applications to link directly to the corresponding parts of your text.

The n attribute may be used to supply (additionally or alternatively) a short mnemonic name or number for a division, or any other element. If a conventional form of reference or abbreviation for the parts of a work already exists (such as the book/chapter/verse pattern of
Biblical citations), the n attribute is the place to record it; unlike the identifier supplied by xml:id, it does not need to be unique.

The xml:lang attribute may be used to specify the language of the division. Languages are identified by an internationally defined code, as further discussed in section 6.3. Foreign Words or Expressions below.

The rend attribute may be used to supply information about the rendition (appearance) of a division, or any other element, as further discussed in section 6. Marking Highlighted Phrases below. As with the type attribute, a project will often find it useful to predefine the possible values for this attribute, but TEI Lite does not constrain it in anyway.

These four attributes, xml:id, n, xml:lang, and rend are so widely useful that they are allowed on any element in any TEI schema: they are global attributes. Other global attributes defined in the TEI Lite scheme are discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking.

The value of every xml:id attribute should be unique within a document. One simple way of ensuring that this is so is to make it reflect the hierarchic structure of the document. For example, Smith’s Wealth of Nations as first published consists of five books, each of which is divided into chapters, while some chapters are further subdivided into parts. We might define xml:id values for this structure as follows:

```xml
<body>
  <div xml:id="WN1" n="I" type="book">
    <div xml:id="WN101" n="I.1" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="WN102" n="I.2" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <!-- ... -->
    <div xml:id="WN110" n="I.10" type="chapter">
      <div xml:id="WN1101" n="I.10.1" type="part">
        <!-- ... -->
      </div>
      <div xml:id="WN1102" n="I.10.2" type="part">
        <!-- ... -->
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
  <div xml:id="WN2" n="II" type="book">
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</body>
```

A different numbering scheme may be used for xml:id and n attributes: this is often useful where a canonical reference scheme is used which does not tally with the structure of the work. For example, in a novel divided into books each containing chapters, where the chapters are numbered sequentially through the whole work, rather than within each book, one might use a scheme such as the following:

```xml
<body>
  <div xml:id="TS01" n="1" type="volume">
    <div xml:id="TS011" n="1" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </div>
  <!-- ... -->
</body>
```
Here the work has two volumes, each containing two chapters. The chapters are numbered conventionally 1 to 4, but the xml:id values specified allow them to be regarded additionally as if they were numbered 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2.

4.2 Headings and Closings

Every `<div>` may have a title or heading at its start, and (less commonly) a trailer such as End of Chapter 1 at its end. The following elements may be used to transcribe them:

- `<head>` (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.
- `<trailer>` contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Some other elements which may be necessary at the beginning or ending of text divisions are discussed below in section 18.1.2. Prefatory Matter.

Whether or not headings and trailers are included in a transcription is a matter for the individual transcriber to decide. Where a heading is completely regular (for example Chapter 1) or may be automatically constructed from attribute values (e.g. `<div type="chapter" n="1">`), it may be omitted; where it contains otherwise unrecoverable text it should always be included. For example, the start of Hardy’s *Under the Greenwood Tree* might be encoded as follows:

```
<div xml:id="UGT1" n="Winter" type="Part">
  <div xml:id="UGT11" n="1" type="Chapter">
    <head>Mellstock-Lane</head>
    <p>To dwellers in a wood almost every species of tree ...</p>
  </div>
</div>
```

4.3 Prose, Verse and Drama

As in the Bronte example above, the paragraphs making up a textual division are tagged with the `<p>` tag. In poetic or dramatic texts different tags are needed, to represent verse lines and stanzas in the first case, or individual speeches and stage directions in the second. :

- `<l>` (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.
- `<lg>` (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.
- `<sp>` (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.
- `<speaker>` contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.
<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.
Here, for example, is the start of a poetic text in which verse lines and stanzas are tagged:

```xml
<lg n="I">
<l>I Sing the progresse of a deathlesse soule,</l>
<l>Whom Fate, with God made, but doth not controule,</l>
<l>Plac'd in most shapes; all times before the law</l>
<l>Yoak'd us, and when, and since, in this I sing.</l>
<l>And the great world to his aged evening;</l>
<l>From infant morne, through manly noone I draw.</l>
<l>What the gold Chaldee, of silver Persian saw,</l>
<l>Greeke brass, or Roman iron, is in this one;</l>
<l>A worke t'out weare Seths pillars, bricke and stone,</l>
<l>And (holy writs excepted) made to yeeld to none.</l>
</lg>
```

Note that the `<lg>` element marks verse lines, not typographic lines: the original lineation of the first few lines above has not therefore been made explicit by this encoding, and may be lost. The `<lb/>` element described in section 5. Page and Line Numbers might additionally be used to mark typographic lines if so desired.

Here is the end of a famous dramatic text, in which speeches and stage directions are marked:

```xml
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>Pull on your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
  <p>You want me to pull off my trousers?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>Pull <emph>on</emph> your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>(realizing his trousers are down)</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <stage>He pulls up his trousers</stage>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>Well? Shall we go?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
  <p>Yes, let's go.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <stage>They do not move.</stage>
</sp>
```

Note that the `<stage>` (stage direction) element can appear either within a speech or between speeches. The `<sp>` ("speech") element contains, following an optional `<speaker>` element
indicating who is speaking, either paragraphs (if the speech is in prose) or verse lines or stanzas as in the next example. In this case, it is quite common to find that verse lines are split between speakers. The easiest way of encoding this is to use the part attribute to indicate that the lines so fragmented are incomplete:

```xml
<div type="Act" n="I">
  <head>ACT I</head>
  <div type="Scene" n="1">
    <head>SCENE I</head>
    <stage rend="italic">Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at several doors</stage>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="I">Long live the King!</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l part="M">Barnardo?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="F">He.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l>You come most carefully upon your hour.</l>
    </sp>
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</div>
```

The same mechanism may be applied to stanzas which are divided between two speakers:

```xml
<div>
  <sp>
    <speaker>First voice</speaker>
    <lg type="stanza" part="I">
      <l>But why drives on that ship so fast</l>
      <l>Withouten wave or wind?</l>
    </lg>
    </sp>
    <sp>
    <speaker>Second Voice</speaker>
    <lg part="F">
      <l>The air is cut away before</l>
      <l>And closes from behind.</l>
    </lg>
    </sp>
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
```
The `<sp>` element can also be used for dialogue presented in a prose work as if it were drama, as in the next example, which also demonstrates the use of the `who` attribute to bear a code identifying the speaker of the piece of dialogue concerned:

```xml
<div>
  <sp who="#OPI">
    <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
    <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
  </sp>
  <sp who="#GRM">
    <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
    <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
  </sp>
  <sp who="#OPI">
    <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
    <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place....</p>
    <p>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I will forbear.</p>
  </sp>
</div>
```

Here the `who` attribute values (#OPI etc.) are links, pointing to a list of the characters in the novel, each of which has an identifier:

```xml
<list>
  <head>Characters in the novel</head>
  <item xml:id="OPI">
    <name>Dr Opimian</name> : named for the famous Roman fine wine
  </item>
  <item xml:id="GRM">
    <name>Mr Gryll</name> : named for the mythical Gryllus, one of Ulysses' sailors transformed by Circe into a pig, who argues that he was happier in that state than as a man
  </item>
</list>
```

5 Page and Line Numbers

Page and line breaks etc. may be marked with the following elements.

- `<pb/>` (page break) marks the start of a new page in a paginated document.
- `<lb/>` (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.
- `<milestone/>` marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

These elements mark a single point in the text, not a span of text. The global `n` attribute should be used to supply the number of the page or line beginning at the tag.

When working from a paginated original, it is often useful to record its pagination, if only to simplify later proof-reading. It is also useful for synchronizing an encoded text with a set of page images. Recording the line breaks may be useful for similar reasons.

If features such as pagination or lineation are marked for more than one edition, specify the edition in question using the `ed` attribute, and supply as many tags are necessary. For example, in the following passage we indicate where the page breaks occur in two different editions (ED1 and ED2)
I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.

A special attribute break may be used to indicate whether or not this empty element is considered as a word-breaking, irrespective of any adjacent whitespace. For example, in the following encoded sample:

The <pb/> and <lb/> elements are special cases of the general class of milestone elements which mark reference points within a text. The generic <milestone/> element can mark any kind of reference point: for example, a column break, the start of a new kind of section not otherwise tagged, or in general any significant change in the text not marked by an XML element. The names used for types of unit and for editions referred to by the ed and unit attributes may be chosen freely, but should be documented in the header <refsDecl> element (see 19.2.3. Reference and Classification Declarations). The <milestone/> element may be used to replace the others, or the others may be used as a set; they should not be mixed arbitrarily.

6 Marking Highlighted Phrases

6.1 Changes of Typeface, etc.

Highlighted words or phrases are those made visibly different from the rest of the text, typically by a change of type font, handwriting style, ink colour etc., which is intended to draw the reader’s attention to some associated change.

The global rend attribute can be attached to any element, and used wherever necessary to specify details of the highlighting used for it in the source. For example, a heading rendered in bold might be tagged <head rend="bold">, and one in italic <head rend="italic">. The values to be used for the rend attribute are not specified by the TEI Guidelines, since they will depend entirely on the needs of the particular project. Some typical values might include italic, bold etc. for font variations; center, right etc. for alignment; large, small etc. for size; smallcaps, allcaps etc. for type variants and so on. Several such words may be used in combination as necessary, but no formal syntax is proposed. The full TEI Guidelines provide more rigorous mechanisms, using other W3C standards such as CSS, as an alternative to the use of rend.

It is not always possible or desirable to interpret the reasons for such changes of rendering in a text. In such cases, the element <hi> may be used to mark a sequence of highlighted text without making any claim as to its status. <hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

In the following example, the use of a distinct typeface for the subheading and for the included name are recorded but not interpreted:

<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesses</hi> that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant, in consideration of the said intended marriage ...

Alternatively, where the cause for the highlighting can be identified with confidence, a number of other, more specific, elements are available.
<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.

<foreign> identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

<gloss> identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

<label> contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

Some features (notably quotations and glosses) may be found in a text either marked by highlighting, or with quotation marks. In either case, the elements <q> and <gloss> (as discussed in the following section) should be used. If the highlighting is to be recorded, use the global rend attribute.

As an example of the elements defined here, consider the following sentence:

On the one hand the Nibelungenlied is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the romans d’antiquité, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, and the German adaptations of these works by Heinrich van Veldeke, Hartmann von Aue, and Wolfram von Eschenbach.

Interpreting the role of the highlighting, the sentence might look like this:

<p>On the one hand the <title>Nibelungenlied</title> is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the <foreign>romans d’antiquité</foreign>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>

Describing only the appearance of the original, it might look like this:

<p>On the one hand the <hi rend="italic">Nibelungenlied</hi> is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the <hi rend="italic">romans d’antiquité</hi>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>

6.2 Quotations and Related Features

Like changes of typeface, quotation marks are conventionally used to denote several different features within a text, of which the most frequent is quotation. When possible, we recommend that the underlying feature be tagged, rather than the simple fact that quotation marks appear in the text, using the following elements:

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

<soCalled> contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics.

<gloss> identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.
6.3 Foreign Words or Expressions

Here is a simple example of a quotation:

```xml
<p>Few dictionary makers are likely to forget Dr. Johnson's description of the lexicographer as <q>a harmless drudge.</q></p>
```

To record how a quotation was printed (for example, in-line or set off as a display or block quotation), the rend attribute should be used. This may also be used to indicate the kind of quotation marks used.

Direct speech interrupted by a narrator can be represented simply by ending the quotation and beginning it again after the interruption, as in the following example:

```xml
<p><q>Who-e debel you?</q> — he at last said — <q>you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.</p>
```

If it is important to convey the idea that the two <q> elements together make up a single speech, the linking attributes next and prev may be used, as described in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking.

Quotations may be accompanied by a reference to the source or speaker, using the who attribute, whether or not this is explicit in the text, as in the following example:

```xml
<q who="#Wilson">Spaulding, he came down into the office just this day eight weeks with this very paper in his hand, and he says:—<q who="#Spaulding">I wish to the Lord, Mr. Wilson, that I was a red-headed man.</q></q>
```

This example also demonstrates how quotations may be embedded within other quotations: one speaker (Wilson) quotes another speaker (Spaulding).

The creator of the electronic text must decide whether quotation marks are replaced by the tags or whether the tags are added and the quotation marks kept. If the quotation marks are removed from the text, the rend attribute may be used to record the way in which they were rendered in the copy text.

The full TEI Guidelines provide additional elements to distinguish direct speech, quotation, and other typical uses of quotation mark although it is not always possible and may not be considered desirable to interpret the function of quotation marks in a text. For simplicity, only <q> (which may be used for any such case) has been included in TEI Lite.

6.3 Foreign Words or Expressions

Words or phrases which are not in the main language of the texts may be tagged as such in one of two ways. If the word or phrase is already tagged for some reason, the element indicated should bear a value for the global xml:lang attribute indicating the language used. Where there is no applicable element, the element <foreign> may be used, again using the xml:lang attribute. For example:

```xml
<p>John has real <foreign xml:lang="fr">savoir-faire</foreign>.</p>
<p>Have you read <title xml:lang="de">Die</title>.</p>
```
As these examples show, the `<foreign>` element should not be used to tag foreign words if some other more specific element such as `<title>`, `<mentioned>`, or `<term>` applies. The global `xml:lang` attribute may be attached to any element to show that it uses some other language than that of the surrounding text.

The codes used to identify languages, supplied on the `xml:lang` attribute, must be constructed in a particular way, and must conform to common Internet standards\(^2\), as further explained in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines. Some simple example codes for a few languages are given here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zh</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enm</td>
<td>Middle English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fr</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grc</td>
<td>Ancient Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>el</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ja</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la</td>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa</td>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7 Notes

All notes, whether printed as footnotes, endnotes, marginalia, or elsewhere, should be marked using the same element:

- `<note>` contains a note or annotation.

Where possible, the body of a note should be inserted in the text at the point at which its identifier or mark first appears. This may not be possible for example with marginalia, which may not be anchored to an exact location. For simplicity, it may be adequate to position marginal notes before the relevant paragraph or other element. Notes may also be placed in a separate division of the text (as end-notes are, in printed books) and linked to the relevant portion of the text using their `target` attribute.

The `n` attribute may be used to supply the number or identifier of a note if this is required. The `resp` attribute should be used consistently to distinguish between authorial and editorial notes, if the work has both kinds.

Examples:

```xml
<p>Collections are ensembles of distinct entities or objects of any sort. <note place="foot" n="1"> We explain below why we use the uncommon term `<mentioned>collection</mentioned>` instead of the expected `<mentioned>set</mentioned>`. Our usage corresponds to the `<mentioned>aggregate</mentioned>` of many mathematical writings and to the sense of `<mentioned>class</mentioned>` found in older logical writings. </note> The elements ...</p>
```

The curse is finally expiated

And now this spell was snapt: once more

I viewed the ocean green,

And looked far forth, yet little saw

Of what had else been seen

8 Cross References and Links

Explicit cross references or links from one point in a text to another in the same or another document may be encoded using the elements described in this section. Implicit links (such as the association between two parallel texts, or that between a text and its interpretation) may be encoded using the linking attributes discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking.

8.1 Simple Cross References

A cross reference from one point within a single document to another can be encoded using either of the following elements:

- `<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.
- `<ptr/> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

The difference between these two elements is that `<ptr/>` is an empty element, simply marking a point from which a link is to be made, whereas `<ref>` may contain some text as well, typically identifying the target of the cross reference. The `<ptr/>` element would be used for a cross reference which is to be indicated by some non-verbal means such as a symbol or icon, or in an electronic text by a button. It is also useful in document production systems, where the formatter can generate the correct verbal form of the cross reference.

The following two forms, for example, are logically equivalent:

See especially `<ref target="#SEC12">section 12 on page 34</ref>`.

See especially `<ptr target="#SEC12"/>`.

The value of the `target` attribute on either element may be the identifier of some other element within the current document. The passage or phrase being pointed at must bear an identifier, and must therefore be tagged as an element of some kind. In the following example, the cross reference is to a `<div>` element:

... see especially `<ptr target="#SEC12"/>`. ...
<div xml:id="SEC12">Concerning Identifiers</div>
</div>

Because the `xml:id` attribute is global, any element in a TEI document may be pointed to in this way. In the following example, a paragraph has been given an identifier so that it may be pointed at:
8 CROSS REFERENCES AND LINKS

... this is discussed in <ref target="#pspec">the paragraph on links</ref> ...

<p xml:id="pspec">Links may be made to any kind of element ...</p>

Sometimes the target of a cross reference does not correspond with any particular feature of a text, and so may not be tagged as an element of some kind. If the desired target is simply a point in the current document, the easiest way to mark it is by introducing an <anchor/> element at the appropriate spot. If the target is some sequence of words not otherwise tagged, the <seg/> element may be introduced to mark them. These two elements are described as follows:

<anchor/> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

<seg/> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level.

In the following (imaginary) example, <ref/> elements have been used to represent points in this text which are to be linked in some way to other parts of it; in the first case to a point, and in the second, to a sequence of words:

Returning to <ref target="#ABCD">the point where I dozed off</ref>, I noticed that <ref target="#EFGH">three words</ref> had been circled in red by a previous reader.

This encoding requires that elements with the specified identifiers (ABCD and EFGH in this example) are to be found somewhere else in the current document. Assuming that no element already exists to carry these identifiers, the <anchor/> and <seg/> elements may be used:

....
<anchor type="bookmark" xml:id="ABCD"/> ..... .....<seg type="target" xml:id="EFGH">
</seg> ...

The type attribute should be used (as above) to distinguish amongst different purposes for which these general purpose elements might be used in a text. Some other uses are discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking below.

8.2 Pointing to other documents

So far, we have shown how the elements <ptr/> and <ref/> may be used for cross-references or links whose targets occur within the same document as their source. However, the same elements may also be used to refer to elements in any other XML document or resource, such as a document on the web, or a database component. This is possible because the value of the target attribute may be any valid universal resource indicator (URI) [Note: A full definition of this term, defined by the W3C (the consortium which manages the development and maintenance of the World Wide Web), is beyond the scope of this tutorial: however, the most frequently encountered version of a URI is the familiar URL used to indicate a web page, such as http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml].

A URI may reference a web page or just a part of one, for example http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml#SEC2. The sharp sign indicates that what follows it is the identifier of an element to be located within the XML document identified by what precedes it: this example will therefore locate an element which has an xml:id attribute value of SEC2 within the document retrieved from http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml. In the examples we have discussed so far, the part to the left of the sharp sign has been omitted: this is understood to mean that the referenced element is to be located within the current document.
Parts of an XML document can be specified by means of other more sophisticated mechanisms using a special language called Xpath, also defined by the W3C. This is particularly useful where the elements to be linked to do not bear identifiers and must therefore be located by some other means.

8.3 Special kinds of Linking

The following special purpose *linking* attributes are defined for every element in the TEI Lite scheme:

- **ana** links an element with its interpretation.
- **corresp** links an element with one or more other corresponding elements.
- **next** links an element to the next element in an aggregate.
- **prev** links an element to the previous element in an aggregate.

The *ana* (analysis) attribute is intended for use where a set of abstract analyses or interpretations have been defined somewhere within a document, as further discussed in section 15. *Interpretation and Analysis*. For example, a linguistic analysis of the sentence John loves Nancy might be encoded as follows:

```xml
<seg type="sentence" ana="SVO">
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">John</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#VVI">loves</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">Nancy</seg>
</seg>
```

This encoding implies the existence elsewhere in the document of elements with identifiers SVO, NP1, and VV1 where the significance of these particular codes is explained. Note the use of the `<seg>` element to mark particular components of the analysis, distinguished by the *type* attribute.

The *corresp* (corresponding) attribute provides a simple way of representing some form of correspondence between two elements in a text. For example, in a multilingual text, it may be used to link translation equivalents, as in the following example:

```xml
<seg xml:lang="fr" xml:id="FR1" corresp="#EN1">Jean aime Nancy</seg>
<seg xml:lang="en" xml:id="EN1" corresp="#FR1">John loves Nancy</seg>
```

The same mechanism may be used for a variety of purposes. In the following example, it has been used to represent the correspondences between the show and Shirley, and between NBC and the network:

```xml
<p>
  <title xml:id="shirley">Shirley</title>, which made its Friday night debut only a month ago, was not listed on <name xml:id="nbc">NBC</name>'s new schedule, although <seg xml:id="network" corresp="#nbc">the network</seg> says <seg xml:id="show" corresp="#shirley">the show</seg> still is being considered.
</p>
```
The next and prev attributes provide a simple way of linking together the components of a discontinuous element, as in the following example:

```xml
<q xml:id="Q1a" next="#Q1b">Who debel you?</q> — he at last said — <q xml:id="Q1b" prev="#Q1a">you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q>
And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.
```

9 Editorial Interventions

The process of encoding an electronic text has much in common with the process of editing a manuscript or other text for printed publication. In either case a conscientious editor may wish to record both the original state of the source and any editorial correction or other change made in it. The elements discussed in this and the next section provide some facilities for meeting these needs.

9.1 Correction and Normalization

The following elements may be used to mark correction, that is editorial changes introduced where the editor believes the original to be erroneous:

- `<corr>` (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.
- `<sic>` (Latin for thus or so ) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

The following elements may be used to mark normalization, that is editorial changes introduced for the sake of consistency or modernization of a text:

- `<orig>` (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.
- `<reg>` (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

As an example, consider this extract from the quarto printing of Shakespeare’s *Henry V*.

... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and a table of green feelds

A modern editor might wish to make a number of interventions here, specifically to modernize (or normalise) the Elizabethan spellings of *a*’ and *feelds* for *he* and *fields* respectively. He or she might also want to emend *table* to *babbl’d*, following an editorial tradition that goes back to the 18th century Shakespearian scholar Lewis Theobald. The following encoding would then be appropriate:

... for his nose was as sharp as
a pen and <reg>he</reg>
<corr resp="#Theobald">babbl’d</corr> of green
<reg>fields</reg>

A more conservative or source-oriented editor, however, might want to retain the original, but at the same time signal that some of the readings it contains are in some sense anomalous:

... for his nose was as sharp as
<orig>a</orig>
<sic>table</sic> of green
<orig>feelds</orig>
Finally, a modern digital editor may decide to combine both possibilities in a single composite text, using the `<choice>` element. `<choice>` groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. This allows an editor to mark where alternative readings are possible:

```
... for his nose was as sharp as a pen and
<choice>
  <orig>a</orig>
  <reg>he</reg>
</choice>
<choice>
  <corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr>
  <sic>table</sic>
</choice> of green
<choice>
  <orig>feelds</orig>
  <reg>fields</reg>
</choice>
```

9.2 Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

In addition to correcting or normalizing words and phrases, editors and transcribers may also supply missing material, omit material, or transcribe material deleted or crossed out in the source. In addition, some material may be particularly hard to transcribe because it is hard to make out on the page. The following elements may be used to record such phenomena:

- `<add>` (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.
- `<gap>` indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.
- `<del>` (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.
- `<unclear>` contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

These elements may be used to record changes made by an editor, by the transcriber, or (in manuscript material) by the author or scribe. For example, if the source for an electronic text read The following elements are provided for simple editorial interventions. then it might be felt desirable to correct the obvious error, but at the same time to record the deletion of the superfluous second `for`, thus:

```
The following elements are provided for `<del resp="#LB">for</del>` simple editorial interventions.
```

The attribute value #LB on the `resp` attribute is used to point to a fuller definition (typically in a `<respStmt>` element) for the agency responsible for correcting the duplication of `for`.

If the source read The following elements are provided for simple editorial interventions. (i.e. if the verb had been inadvertently dropped) then the corrected text might read:

```
The following elements are `<add resp="#LB">are</add>` provided for simple editorial interventions.
```
These elements are also used to record authorial changes in manuscripts. A manuscript in which the author has first written How it galls me, what a galling shadow, then crossed out the word galls and inserted dogs might be encoded thus:

How it <del hand="#DHL" type="overstrike">galls</del> <add hand="#DHL" place="supralinear">dogs</add> me, what a galling shadow

Again, the code #DHL points to another location where more information about the hand concerned is to be found.

Similarly, the <unclear> and <gap> elements may be used together to indicate the omission of illegible material; the following example also shows the use of <add> for a conjectural emendation:

One hundred & twenty good regulars joined to me <unclear> <gap reason="indecipherable"/> </unclear> & instantly, would aid me signally <add hand="#ed">in?</add> an enterprise against Wilmington.

The <del> element marks material which has been transcribed as part of the electronic text despite being marked as deleted, while <gap> marks the location of material which is omitted from the electronic text, whether it is legible or not. A language corpus, for example, might omit long quotations in foreign languages:

<p>... An example of a list appearing in a fief ledger of <name type="place">Koldinghus</name> <date>1611/12</date> is given below. It shows cash income from a sale of honey.</p> <gap> <desc>quotation from ledger (in Danish)</desc> </gap> <p>A description of the overall structure of the account is once again ... </p>

Other corpora (particular those constructed before the widespread use of scanners) systematically omit figures and mathematics:

<p>At the bottom of your screen below the mode line is the <term>minibuffer</term>. This is the area where Emacs echoes the commands you enter and where you specify filenames for Emacs to find, values for search and replace, and so on. <gap reason="graphic"> <desc>diagram of Emacs screen</desc> </gap> </p>

The full TEI scheme provides more precise ways of capturing different aspects of a transcription, distinguishing for example between text added or supplied by the encoder and text indicated as supplied or deleted in the source. TEI Lite does not provide different tags for these purposes.

---

3The full TEI provides a range of elements for encoding metadata about manuscript production and description, which are not however included in TEI Lite.
9.3 Abbreviations and their Expansion

Like names, dates, and numbers, abbreviations may be transcribed as they stand or expanded; they may be left unmarked, or encoded using the following elements:

- `<abbr>` (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.
- `<expan>` (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

The `<abbr>` element is useful as a means of distinguishing semi-lexical items such as acronyms or jargon:

```
We can sum up the above discussion as follows: the identity of a `<abbr>`CC</abbr>` is defined by that calibration of values which motivates the elements of its `<abbr>`GSP</abbr>;
```

```
Every manufacturer of `<abbr>`3GL</abbr>` or `<abbr>`4GL</abbr>` languages is currently nailing on `<abbr>`OOP</abbr>` extensions
```

The `type` attribute may be used to distinguish types of abbreviation by their function.

The `<expan>` element is used to mark an expansion supplied by an encoder. This element is particularly useful in the transcription of manuscript materials. For example, the character p with a bar through its descender as a conventional representation for the word per is commonly encountered in Medieval European manuscripts. An encoder may choose to expand this as follows:

```
<expan>per</expan>
```

The expansion corresponding with an abbreviated form may not always contain the same letters as the abbreviation. Where it does, however, common editorial practice is to italicize or otherwise signal which letters have been supplied. The `<expan>` element should not be used for this purpose since its function is to indicate an expanded form, not a part of one. For example, consider the common abbreviation `wt` (for with) found in medieval texts. In a modern edition, an editor might wish to represent this as `w<i>th</i>`, italicising the letters not found in the source. One simple means of achieving that would be an encoding such as the follow

```
<expan><hi rend="it">i</hi>t<hi rend="it">h</hi></expan>
```

The full TEI also provides elements `<ex>` and `<am>` for use in this situation, but these are not included in the TEI Lite schema.

To record both an abbreviation and its expansion, the `<choice>` element mentioned above may be used to group the abbreviated form with its proposed expansion:

```
<choice>
  <abbr>wt</abbr>
  <expan>with</expan>
</choice>
```

10 Names, Dates, and Numbers

The TEI scheme defines elements for a large number of data-like features which may appear almost anywhere within almost any kind of text. These features may be of particular interest
in a range of disciplines; they all relate to objects external to the text itself, such as the names of persons and places, numbers and dates. They also pose particular problems for many natural language processing (NLP) applications because of the variety of ways in which they may be presented within a text. The elements described here, by making such features explicit, reduce the complexity of processing texts containing them.

10.1 Names and Referring Strings

A referring string is a phrase which refers to some person, place, object, etc. Two elements are provided to mark such strings:

\(<rs>\) (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

\(<name>\) (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

The type attribute is used to distinguish amongst (for example) names of persons, places and organizations, where this is possible:

\(<q>My \ dear \ <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, \</q> \ said \ his \ lady \ to \ him \ one \ day,
\(<q>have \ you \ heard \ that \ <rs type="place">Netherfield \ Park</rs> \ is \ let \ at \ last?</q>"

It being one of the principles of the \(<rs type="organization">Circumlocution Office</rs>\) never, on any account whatsoever, to give a straightforward answer, \(<rs type="person">Mr Barnacle</rs>\) said, \(<q>Possibly.</q>"

As the following example shows, the \(<rs>\) element may be used for any reference to a person, place, etc, not necessarily one in the form of a proper noun or noun phrase.

\(<q>My \ dear \ <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>,\</q> \ said \ <rs type="person">his \ lady</rs> \ to \ him \ one \ day..."

The \(<name>\) element by contrast is provided for the special case of referencing strings which consist only of proper nouns; it may be used synonymously with the \(<rs>\) element, or nested within it if a referring string contains a mixture of common and proper nouns.

Simply tagging something as a name is rarely enough to enable automatic processing of personal names into the canonical forms usually required for reference purposes. The name as it appears in the text may be inconsistently spelled, partial, or vague. Moreover, name prefixes such as van or de la, may or may not be included as part of the reference form of a name, depending on the language and country of origin of the bearer.

The key attribute provides an alternative normalized identifier for the object being named, like a database record key. It may thus be useful as a means of gathering together all references to the same individual or location scattered throughout a document:

\(<q>My \ dear \ <rs type="person" key="BENM1">Mr. Bennet</rs>, \</q> \ said \ <rs type="person" key="BENM2">his \ lady</rs> \ to \ him \ one \ day,
\(<q>have \ you \ heard \ that \ <rs type="place" key="NETP1">Netherfield \ Park</rs> \ is \ let \ at \ last?</q>"

This use should be distinguished from the case of the \(<reg>\) (regularization) element, which provides a means of marking the standard form of a referencing string as demonstrated below:
The `<index>` element discussed in `indexing` may be more appropriate if the function of the regularization is to provide a consistent index:

Although adequate for many simple applications, these methods have two inconveniences: if the name occurs many times, then its regularised form must be repeated many times; and the burden of additional XML markup in the body of the text may be inconvenient to maintain and complex to process. For applications such as onomastics, relating to persons or places named rather than the name itself, or wherever a detailed analysis of the component parts of a name is needed, the full TEI Guidelines provide a range of other solutions.

10.2 Dates and Times

Tags for the more detailed encoding of times and dates include the following:

- `<date>` contains a date in any format.
- `<time>` contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

These elements have a number of attributes which can be used to provide normalised versions of their values.

- `att.datable` provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.
  - `calendar` indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.
  - `period` supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.
  - `when [att.datable.w3c]` supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

The `when` attribute specifies a normalized form for the date or time, using one of the standard formats defined by ISO 8601. Partial dates or times (e.g. 1990, September 1990, twelvish) can be expressed by omitting a part of the value supplied, as in the following examples:

```
<date when="1980-02-21">21 Feb 1980</date>
<date when="1990">1990</date>
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
<date when="--09">September</date>
```
Note in the last example the use of a normalized representation for the date string which includes a time: this example could thus equally well be tagged using the `<time>` element.

Given on the `<date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>`

11 Lists

The element `<list>` is used to mark any kind of list. A list is a sequence of text items, which may be numbered, bulleted, or arranged as a glossary list. Each item may be preceded by an item label (in a glossary list, this label is the term being defined): `<list>` contains any sequence of items organized as a list. `<item>` contains one component of a list. `<label>` contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

Individual list items are tagged with `<item>`. The first `<item>` may optionally be preceded by a `<head>`, which gives a heading for the list. The numbering of a list may be omitted, indicated using the `n` attribute on each item, or (rarely) tagged as content using the `<label>` element. The following are all thus equivalent:

```xml
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <item>First item in list.</item>
  <item>Second item in list.</item>
</list>
```
The styles should not be mixed in the same list.

A simple two-column table may be treated as a glossary list, tagged `<list type="gloss">`. Here, each item comprises a `term` and a `gloss`, marked with `<label>` and `<item>` respectively. These correspond to the elements `<term>` and `<gloss>`, which can occur anywhere in prose text.

Where the internal structure of a list item is more complex, it may be preferable to regard the list as a `table`, for which special-purpose tagging is defined below ([13. Tables]).

Lists of whatever kind can, of course, nest within list items to any depth required. Here, for example, a glossary list contains two items, each of which is itself a simple list:
A list need not necessarily be displayed in list format. For example,

<list type="gloss">
<label>EVIL</label>
<item type="simple">
  <item>I am cast upon a horrible desolate island, void of all hope of recovery.</item>
  <item>I am singled out and separated as it were from all the world to be miserable.</item>
  <item>I am divided from mankind — a solitaire; one banished from human society.</item>
</item>
</list>

<list type="gloss">
<label>GOOD</label>
<item type="simple">
  <item>But I am alive; and not drowned, as all my ship's company were.</item>
  <item>But I am singled out, too, from all the ship's crew, to be spared from death.</item>
  <item>But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place, affording no sustenances....</item>
</item>
</list>

On those remote pages it is written that animals are divided into

<list rend="run-on">
  <item n="a">those that belong to the Emperor</item>
  <item n="b">embalmed ones</item>
  <item n="c">those that are trained</item>
  <item n="d">suckling pigs</item>
  <item n="e">mermaids</item>
  <item n="f">fabulous ones</item>
  <item n="g">stray dogs</item>
  <item n="h">those that are included in this classification</item>
  <item n="i">those that tremble as if they were mad</item>
  <item n="j">innumerable ones</item>
  <item n="k">those drawn with a very fine camel's hair brush</item>
  <item n="l">others</item>
  <item n="m">those that have just broken a flower vase</item>
  <item n="n">those that resemble flies from a distance</item>
</list>

Lists of bibliographic items should be tagged using the <listBibl> element, described in the next section.

12 Bibliographic Citations

It is often useful to distinguish bibliographic citations where they occur within texts being transcribed for research, if only so that they will be properly formatted when the text is printed out. The element <bibl> is provided for this purpose. Where the components of a bibliographic reference are to be distinguished, the following elements may be used as appropriate. It is generally useful to mark at least those parts (such as the titles of articles, books, and journals) which will need special formatting. The other elements are provided for cases where particular interest attaches to such details.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

date> contains a date in any format.

editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

title> contains a title for any kind of work.

For example, the following editorial note might be transcribed as shown:

He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to Kittredge, Harvard Studies 5. 88ff).

For lists of bibliographic citations, the <listBibl> element should be used; it may contain a series of <bibl> elements.

13 Tables
Tables represent a challenge for any text processing system, but simple tables, at least, appear in so many texts that even in the simplified TEI tag set presented here, markup for tables is necessary. The following elements are provided for this purpose:
<table> contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

row> contains one row of a table.

cell> contains one cell of a table.

For example, Defoe uses mortality tables like the following in the Journal of the Plague Year to show the rise and ebb of the epidemic:

<p>It was indeed coming on amain, for the burials that same week were in the next adjoining parishes thus:— <table rows="5" cols="4">
<tr role="data">
<td role="label">St. Leonard's, Shoreditch</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr role="data">
<td role="label">St. Botolph's, Bishopsgate</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
</table>
</p>
This shutting up of houses was at first counted a very cruel and unchristian method, and the poor people so confined made bitter lamentations. ...
It is also often convenient to include a brief description of the image. The `<figure>` element provides a means of wrapping one or more such elements together as a kind of graphic block:

```xml
<figure>
  <graphic url="fessipic.png"/>
  <head>Mr Fezziwig's Ball</head>
  <figDesc>A Cruikshank engraving showing Mr Fezziwig leading a group of revellers.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

These cases should be carefully distinguished from the case where an encoded text is complemented by a collection of digital images, maintained as a distinct resource. The `facs` attribute may be used to associate any element in an encoded text with a digital facsimile of it. In the simple case where only page images are available, the `facs` attribute on the `<pb/>` element may be used to associate each image with an appropriate point in the text:

```xml
<text>
  <pb facs="pagel.png" n="1"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 1 is encoded here -->
  <pb facs="page2.png" n="2"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 2 is encoded here -->
</text>
```

This method is only appropriate in the simple case where each digital image file `pagel.png` etc. corresponds with a single transcribed and encoded page. If more detailed alignment of image and transcription is required, for example because the image files actually represent double page spreads, more sophisticated mechanisms are provided in the full TEI Guidelines.

15 Interpretation and Analysis

It is often said that all markup is a form of interpretation or analysis. While it is certainly difficult, and may be impossible, to distinguish firmly between objective and subjective information in any universal way, it remains true that judgments concerning the latter are typically regarded as more likely to provide controversy than those concerning the former. Many scholars therefore prefer to record such interpretations only if it is possible to alert the reader that they are considered more open to dispute, than the rest of the markup. This section describes some of the elements provided by the TEI scheme to meet this need.

15.1 Orthographic Sentences

Interpretation typically ranges across the whole of a text, with no particular respect to other structural units. A useful preliminary to intensive interpretation is therefore to segment the text into discrete and identifiable units, each of which can then bear a label for use as a sort of canonical reference. To facilitate such uses, these units may not cross each other, nor nest within each other. They may conveniently be represented using the following element:

```
<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.
```

As the name suggests, the `<s>` element is most commonly used (in linguistic applications at least) for marking orthographic sentences, that is, units defined by orthographic features such as punctuation. For example, the passage from *Jane Eyre* discussed earlier might be divided into s-units as follows:

```xml
<pb n="474"/>
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p>
```

33
Reader, I married him.<br>
A quiet wedding we had:<br>
he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present.<br>
When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said —

Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.<br>...
15.3 General-Purpose Interpretation Elements

The `<w>` element is a specialisation of the `<seg>` element which has already been introduced for use in identifying otherwise unmarked targets of cross references and hypertext links (see section 8. Cross References and Links); it identifies some phrase-level portion of text to which the encoder may assign a user-specified type, as well as a unique identifier; it may thus be used to tag textual features for which there is no other provision in the published TEI Guidelines.

For example, the Guidelines provide no apostrophe element to mark parts of a literary text in which the narrator addresses the reader (or hearer) directly. One approach might be to regard these as instances of the `<q>` element, distinguished from others by an appropriate value for the `who` attribute. A possibly simpler, and certainly more general, solution would however be to use the `<seg>` element as follows:

```xml
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p>
    <seg type="apostrophe">Reader, I married him.</seg> A quiet wedding we had: ...
  </p>
</div>
```

The `type` attribute on the `<seg>` element can take any value, and so can be used to record phrase-level phenomena of any kind; it is good practice to record the values used and their significance in the header.

A `<seg>` element of one type (unlike the `<s>` element which it superficially resembles) can be nested within a `<seg>` element of the same or another type. This enables quite complex structures to be represented; some examples were given in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking above. However, because it must respect the requirement that elements be properly nested and may not cut across each other, it cannot cope with the common requirement to associate an interpretation with arbitrary segments of a text which may completely ignore the document hierarchy. It also requires that the interpretation itself be represented by a single coded value in the `type` attribute.

Neither restriction applies to the `<interp>` element, which provides powerful features for the encoding of quite complex interpretive information in a relatively straightforward manner. `<interp>` (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. `<interpGrp>` (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type.

These elements allow the encoder to specify both the class of an interpretation, and the particular instance of that class which the interpretation involves. Thus, whereas with `<seg>` one can say simply that something is an apostrophe, with `<interp>` one can say that it is an instance (apostrophe) of a larger class (rhetorical figures).

Moreover, `<interp>` is a stand off element: it does not surround the segments of text which it describes, but instead is linked to the passage in question either by means of the `ana` attribute discussed in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking above, or by means of its own `inst` attribute. This means that any kind of analysis can be represented, independently of the document hierarchy, as well as facilitating the grouping of analyses of a particular type together. A special purpose `<interpGrp>` element is provided for the latter purpose.

For example, suppose that you wish to mark such diverse aspects of a text as themes or subject matter, rhetorical figures, and the locations of individual scenes of the narrative. Different portions of our sample passage from *Jane Eyre* for example, might be associated with the rhetorical figures of apostrophe, hyperbole, and metaphor; with subject-matter references to churches, servants, cooking, postal service, and honeymoons; and with scenes located in the church, in the kitchen, and in an unspecified location (drawing room?).
These interpretations could be placed anywhere within the `<text>` element; it is however good practice to put them all in the same place (e.g. a separate section of the front or back matter), as in the following example:

```xml
<back>
  <div type="Interpretations">
    <p>
      <interp xml:id="fig-apos-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="figureOfSpeech">apostrophe</interp>
      <interp xml:id="fig-hyp-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="figureOfSpeech">hyperbole</interp>
      <interp xml:id="set-church-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="setting">church</interp>
      <interp xml:id="ref-church-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="reference">church</interp>
      <interp xml:id="ref-serv-1" resp="#LB-MSM" type="reference">servants</interp>
    </p>
  </div>
</back>
```

The evident redundancy of this encoding can be considerably reduced by using the `<interp-Grp>` element to group together all those `<interp>` elements which share common attribute values, as follows:

```xml
<back>
  <div type="Interpretations">
    <p>
      <interpGrp type="figureOfSpeech" resp="#LB-MSM">
        <interp xml:id="fig-apos">apostrophe</interp>
        <interp xml:id="fig-hyp">hyperbole</interp>
        <interp xml:id="fig-meta">metaphor</interp>
      </interpGrp>
      <interpGrp type="scene-setting" resp="#LB-MSM">
        <interp xml:id="set-church">church</interp>
        <interp xml:id="set-kitch">kitchen</interp>
        <interp xml:id="set-unspec">unspecified</interp>
      </interpGrp>
      <interpGrp type="reference" resp="#LB-MSM">
        <interp xml:id="ref-church">church</interp>
        <interp xml:id="ref-serv">servants</interp>
        <interp xml:id="ref-cook">cooking</interp>
      </interpGrp>
    </p>
  </div>
</back>
```

Once these interpretation elements have been defined, they can be linked with the parts of the text to which they apply in either or both of two ways. The `ana` attribute can be used on whichever element is appropriate:

```xml
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p xml:id="P38.1" ana="#set-church #set-kitch">
  </p>
</div>
```
Reader, I married him.

Note in this example that since the paragraph has two settings (in the church and in the kitchen), the identifiers of both have been supplied.

Alternatively, the `<interp>` elements can point to all the parts of the text to which they apply, using their `inst` attribute:

```xml
<interp xml:id="fig-apos-2" type="figureOfSpeech" inst="#P38.1.1" apex="#LB-MSM">apostrophe</ interp>
<interp xml:id="set-church-2" type="scene-setting" inst="#P38.1" resp="#LB-MSM">church</ interp>
<interp xml:id="set-kitchen-2" type="scene-setting" inst="#P38.1" resp="#LB-MSM">kitchen</ interp>
```

The `<interp>` element is not limited to any particular type of analysis. The literary analysis shown above is but one possibility; one could equally well use `<interp>` to capture a linguistic part-of-speech analysis. For example, the example sentence given in section 8.3. Special kinds of Linking assumes a linguistic analysis which might be represented as follows:

```xml
<interp xml:id="NP1" type="pos">noun phrase, singular</ interp>
<interp xml:id="VV1" type="pos">inflected verb, present-tense singular</ interp> ...
```

16 Technical Documentation

Although the focus of this document is on the use of the TEI scheme for the encoding of existing pre-electronic documents, the same scheme may also be used for the encoding of new documents. In the preparation of new documents (such as this one), XML has much to recommend it: the document’s structure can be clearly represented, and the same electronic text can be re-used for many purposes — to provide both online hypertext or browsable versions and well-formatted typeset versions from a common source for example.

To facilitate this, the TEI Lite schema includes some elements for marking features of technical documents in general, and of XML-related documents in particular.

16.1 Additional Elements for Technical Documents

The following elements may be used to mark particular features of technical documents:

- `<eg>` (example) contains any kind of illustrative example.
- `<code>` contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.
- `<ident>` (identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language. `<ident>` is used for tokens such as variable names, class names, type names, function names etc. in formal programming languages.
- `<gi>` (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element.
- `<att>` (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text.
- `<formula>` contains a mathematical or other formula.
- `<val>` (value) contains a single attribute value.
The following example shows how these elements might be used to encode a passage from a tutorial introducing the Fortran programming language:

```xml
<p>It is traditional to introduce a language with a program like the following: <code xml:space="preserve">CHAR*12 GRTG
GRTG = 'HELLO WORLD'
PRINT *, GRTG
END</code></p>

This simple example first declares a variable <code>GRTG</code>, in the line <code>CHAR*12 GRTG</code>, which identifies <code>GRTG</code> as consisting of 12 bytes of type <code>CHAR</code>. To this variable, the value <code>HELLO WORLD</code> is then assigned.</p>

A formatting application, given a text like that above, can be instructed to format examples appropriately (e.g. to preserve line breaks, or to use a distinctive font). Similarly, the use of tags such as <code>GRTG</code> greatly facilitates the construction of a useful index.

The <code>formula</code> element should be used to enclose a mathematical or chemical formula presented within the text as a distinct item. Since formulae generally include a large variety of special typographic features not otherwise present in ordinary text, it will usually be necessary to present the body of the formula in a specialized notation. The notation used should be specified by the <code>notation</code> attribute, as in the following example:

```xml
<formula notation="tex"> \begin{math}E = mc^{2}\end{math} </formula>
```

A particular problem arises when XML encoding is the subject of discussion within a technical document, itself encoded in XML. In such a document, it is clearly essential to distinguish clearly the markup occurring within examples from that marking up the document itself, and end-tags are highly likely to occur. One simple solution is to use the predefined entity reference &lt; to represent each < character which marks the start of an XML tag within the examples. A more general solution is to mark off the whole body of each example as containing data which is not to be scanned for XML mark-up by the parser. This is achieved by enclosing it within a special XML construct called a <code>CDATA marked section</code>, as in the following example:

```xml
<p>A list should be encoded as follows: <code>![CDATA [ <list> <item>First item in the list</item> <item>Second item</item> </list> ]]]</code> The <code>list</code> element consists of a series of <code>item</code> elements.

The <code>list</code> element used within the example above will not be regarded as forming part of the document proper, because it is embedded within a marked section (beginning with the special markup declaration <![CDATA[ and ending with ]]>).

Note also the use of the <code>item</code> element to tag references to element names (or <em>generic identifiers</em>) within the body of the text.

### 16.2 Generated Divisions

Most modern document production systems have the ability to generate automatically whole sections such as a table of contents or an index. The TEI Lite scheme provides an element to mark the location at which such a generated section should be placed.
16.3 Index Generation

<divGen> (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a
textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to
appear.

The <divGen> element can be placed anywhere that a division element would be legal, as in
the following example:

```
<front>
  <titlePage>
  <!-- ... -->
  </titlePage>
  <divGen type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
  </div>
  </titlePage>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
  </div>
</front>

<body>
  <!-- ... -->
</body>

<back>
  <div>
    <head>Appendix</head>
  </div>
  <divGen type="index" n="Index"/>
</back>
```

This example also demonstrates the use of the type attribute to distinguish the different kinds
of division to be generated: in the first case a table of contents (a toc) and in the second an
index.

When an existing index or table of contents is to be encoded (rather than one being generated)
for some reason, the <list> element discussed in section 11. Lists should be used.

16.3 Index Generation

While production of a table of contents from a properly tagged document is generally
unproblematic for an automatic processor, the production of a good quality index will often
require more careful tagging. It may not be enough simply to produce a list of all parts tagged
in some particular way, although extracting (for example) all occurrences of elements such as
<term> or <name> will often be a good departure point for an index.

The TEI schema provides a special purpose <index> tag which may be used to mark both
the parts of the document which should be indexed, and how the indexing should be done.

<index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

For example, the second paragraph of this section might include the following:

```
... TEI lite also provides a special purpose
<g>index</g> tag
:index>
  <term>indexing</term>
</index>

:index>
  <term>index (tag)</term>
</index>
  <term>use in index generation</term>
</index>

which may be used ...
```
The `<index>` element can also be used to provide a form of interpretive or analytic information. For example, in a study of Ovid, it might be desired to record all the poet’s references to different figures, for comparative stylistic study. In the following lines of the *Metamorphoses*, such a study would record the poet’s references to Jupiter (as *deus*, *se*, and as the subject of *confiteor* [in inflectional form number 227]), to Jupiter-in-the-guise-of-a-bull (as *imago tauri fallacis* and the subject of *teneo*), and so on.4

40

This need might be met using the `<note>` element discussed in section in [7. Notes], or with the `<interp>` element discussed in section [15. Interpretation and Analysis]. Here we demonstrate how it might also be satisfied by using the `<index>` element.

We assume that the object is to generate more than one index: one for names of deities (called *dn*), another for onomastic references (called *on*), a third for pronominal references (called *pr*) and so forth. One way of achieving this might be as follows:

```xml
<Example>
<term>Iuppiter</term>
</Example>
```

For each `<index>` element above, an entry will be generated in the appropriate index, using as headword the content of the `<term>` element it contains; the `<term>` elements nested within the secondary `<index>` element in each case provide a secondary keyword. The actual reference will be taken from the context in which the `<index>` element appears, i.e. in this case the identifier of the `<Example>` element containing it.

4The analysis is taken, with permission, from Willard McCarty and Burton Wright, *An Analytical Onomasticon to the Metamorphoses of Ovid* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, forthcoming). Some simplifications have been undertaken.
16.4 Addresses

The `<address>` element is used to mark a postal address of any kind. It contains one or more `<addrLine>` elements, one for each line of the address.

`<address>` contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

`<addrLine>` (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

Here is a simple example:

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computer Center (M/C 135)</addrLine>
  <addrLine>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60612-7352</addrLine>
  <addrLine>U.S.A.</addrLine>
</address>
```

The individual parts of an address may be further distinguished by using the `<name>` element discussed above (section 10.1. Names and Referring Strings).

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computer Center (M/C 135)</addrLine>
  <addrLine>1940 W. Taylor, Room 124</addrLine>
  <addrLine>
    <name type="city">Chicago</name>, IL 60612-7352
  </addrLine>
  <addrLine>
    <name type="country">USA</name>
  </addrLine>
</address>
```

17 Character Sets, Diacritics, etc.

With the advent of XML and its adoption of Unicode as the required character set for all documents, most problems previously associated with the representation of the diverse languages and writing systems of the world are greatly reduced. For those working with standard forms of the European languages in particular, almost no special action is needed: any XML editor should enable you to input accented letters or other non-ASCII characters directly, and they should be stored in the resulting file in a way which is transferable directly between different systems.

There are two important exceptions: the characters `&` and `<` may not be entered directly in an XML document, since they have a special significance as initiating markup. They must always be represented as entity references, like this: `&amp;` or `&lt;`. Other characters may also be represented by means of entity reference where necessary, for example to retain compatibility with a pre-Unicode processing system.

18 Front and Back Matter

18.1 Front Matter

For many purposes, particularly in older texts, the preliminary material such as title pages, prefatory epistles, etc., may provide very useful additional linguistic or social information. P5 provides a set of recommendations for distinguishing the textual elements most commonly encountered in front matter, which are summarized here.

18.1.1 Title Page

The start of a title page should be marked with the element `<titlePage>`. All text contained on the page should be transcribed and tagged with the appropriate element from the following list:
<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.
<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.
<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.
<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.
<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).
<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline.
<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.
<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page.

Typeface distinctions should be marked with the *rend* attribute when necessary, as described above. Very detailed description of the letter spacing and sizing used in ornamental titles is not as yet provided for by the Guidelines. Changes of language should be marked by appropriate use of the *xml:lang* attribute or the *<foreign>* element, as necessary. Names of people, places, or organizations, may be tagged using the *<name>* element wherever they appear if no other more specific element is available.

Two example title pages follow:

```
<titlePage rend="Roman">
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main"> PARADISE REGAIN'D. A POEM In IV <hi>BOOKS</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
<titlePart> To which is added <title>SAMSON AGONISTES</title>. </titlePart>
</titlePage>

<byline>The Author <docAuthor>JOHN MILTON</docAuthor>.
</byline>
<docImprint>
  <name>LONDON</name>, Printed by <name>J.M.</name> for <name>John Starkey</name>
  at the <name>Mitre</name> in <name>Fleetstreet</name>, near <name>Temple-Bar</name>.
</docImprint>
<docDate>MDCLXXI</docDate>
</titlePage>

<titlePage>
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main"> Lives of the Queens of England, from the Norman Conquest;</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">with anecdotes of their courts. </titlePart>
</docTitle>
<titlePart>Now first published from Official Records and other authentic documents private as well as public.</titlePart>
```
18.1 Front Matter

As elsewhere, the ref attribute may be used to link a name with a canonical definition of the entity being named. For example:

By <docAuthor>Agnes Strickland</docAuthor>

<byline>
<name ref="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Agnes_Strickland">Agnes Strickland</name>
</byline>

18.1.2 Prefatory Matter

Major blocks of text within the front matter should be marked using <div> elements; the following suggested values for the type attribute may be used to distinguish various common types of prefatory matter:

- **preface** A foreword or preface addressed to the reader in which the author or publisher explains the content, purpose, or origin of the text.

- **dedication** A formal offering or dedication of a text to one or more persons or institutions by the author.

- **abstract** A summary of the content of a text as continuous prose.

- **ack** A formal declaration of acknowledgment by the author in which persons and institutions are thanked for their part in the creation of a text.

- **contents** A table of contents, specifying the structure of a work and listing its constituents. The <list> element should be used to mark its structure.

- **frontispiece** A pictorial frontispiece, possibly including some text.

Where other kinds of prefatory matter are encountered, the encoder is at liberty to invent other values for the type attribute.

Like any text division, those in front matter may contain low level structural or non-structural elements as described elsewhere. They will generally begin with a heading or title of some kind which should be tagged using the <head> element. Epistles will contain the following additional elements:

- **<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

- **<signed>** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

- **<byline>** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.
<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

<argument> contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

<imprimatur> contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

<opener> groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

<closer> groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

Epistles which appear elsewhere in a text will, of course, contain these same elements. As an example, the dedication at the start of Milton’s Comus should be marked up as follows:

```xml
<div type="dedication">
  <head>To the Right Honourable <name>JOHN Lord Viscount BRACLY</name>, Son and Heir apparent to the Earl of Bridgewater, &c.</head>
  <salute>MY LORD,</salute>
  <p>This <hi>Poem</hi>, which receiv'd its first occasion of Birth from your Self, and others of your Noble Family ... and as in this representation your attendant <name>Thyrsis</name>, so now in all reall expression</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Your faithfull, and most humble servant</salute>
    <signed><name>H. LAWES</name></signed>
  </closer>
</div>
```

18.2 Back Matter

18.2.1 Structural Divisions of Back Matter

Because of variations in publishing practice, back matter can contain virtually any of the elements listed above for front matter, and the same elements should be used where this is so. Additionally, back matter may contain the following types of matter within the <back> element. Like the structural divisions of the body, these should be marked as <div> elements, and distinguished by the following suggested values of the type attribute:

**appendix** An ancillary self-contained section of a work, often providing additional but in some sense extra-canonical text.

**glossary** A list of terms associated with definition texts (‘glosses’): this should be encoded as a «list type="gloss"» element

**notes** A section in which textual or other kinds of notes are gathered together.

**bibliogr** A list of bibliographic citations: this should be encoded as a <listBibl>

**index** Any form of pre-existing index to the work (An index may also be generated for a document by using the <index> element described above).
The Electronic Title Page

Every TEI text has a header which provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of printed text. The header is introduced by the element `<teiHeader>` and has four major parts:

- `<fileDesc>` (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.
- `<encodingDesc>` (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.
- `<profileDesc>` (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.
- `<revisionDesc>` (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

A corpus or collection of texts with many shared characteristics may have one header for the corpus and individual headers for each component of the corpus. In this case the `type` attribute indicates the type of header. `<teiHeader type="corpus">` introduces the header for corpus-level information.

Some of the header elements contain running prose which consists of one or more `<p>`s. Others are grouped:

- Elements whose names end in `Stmt` (for statement) usually enclose a group of elements recording some structured information.
- Elements whose names end in `Decl` (for declaration) enclose information about specific encoding practices.
- Elements whose names end in `Desc` (for description) contain a prose description.

The File Description

The `<fileDesc>` element is mandatory. It contains a full bibliographic description of the file with the following elements:

- `<titleStmt>` (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content.
- `<editionStmt>` (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.
- `<extent>` describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.
- `<publicationStmt>` (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.
- `<seriesStmt>` (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.
- `<notesStmt>` (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.
- `<sourceDesc>` (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

A minimal header has the following structure:
19.1.1 The Title Statement

The following elements can be used in the `<titleStmt>`:

- `<title>` contains a title for any kind of work.
- `<author>` in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.
- `<sponsor>` specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.
- `<funder>` (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.
- `<principal>` (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.
- `<respStmt>` (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

The title of a digital resource derived from a non-digital one will obviously be similar. However, it is important to distinguish the title of the computer file from that of the source text, for example:

```
<titleStmt>
  <title>Two stories by Edgar Allen Poe: a machine readable transcription</title>
  <author>Poe, Edgar Allen (1809-1849)</author>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>James D. Benson</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```
19.1.2 The Edition Statement
The <editionStmt> groups information relating to one edition of the digital resource (where edition is used as elsewhere in bibliography), and may include the following elements:
<edition> describes the particularities of one edition of a text.
<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

Example:

```xml
<editionStmt>
  <edition n="U2">Third draft, substantially revised <date>1987</date>
</edition>
</editionStmt>
```

Determining exactly what constitutes a new edition of an electronic text is left to the encoder.

19.1.3 The Extent Statement
The <extent> statement describes the approximate size of the digital resource.

Example:

```xml
<extent>4532 bytes</extent>
```

19.1.4 The Publication Statement
The <publicationStmt> is mandatory. It may contain a simple prose description or groups of the elements described below:
<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.
<distributor> supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.
<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor.

At least one of these three elements must be present, unless the entire publication statement is in prose. The following elements may occur within them:
<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.
<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.
<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.
<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc.
<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text.
<date> contains a date in any format.

Example:
19.1.5 Series and Notes Statements

The `<seriesStmt>` element groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. It may contain `<title>`, `<idno>`, or `<respStmt>` elements.

The `<notesStmt>`, if used, contains one or more `<note>` elements which contain a note or annotation. Some information found in the notes area in conventional bibliography has been assigned specific elements in the TEI scheme.

19.1.6 The Source Description

The `<sourceDesc>` is a mandatory element which records details of the source or sources from which the computer file is derived. It may contain simple prose or a bibliographic citation, using one or more of the following elements:

- `<bibl>` (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- `<listBibl>` (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

Examples:

```xml
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>

<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>CNN Network News</bibl>
  <title>News headlines</title>
  <date>12 Jun 1989</date>
</sourceDesc>
```

19.2 The Encoding Description

The `<encodingDesc>` element specifies the methods and editorial principles which governed the transcription of the text. Its use is highly recommended. It may be prose description or may contain elements from the following list:

- `<projectDesc>` (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.
- `<samplingDecl>` (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.
19.2 The Encoding Description

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.  
<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.  
<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.  

19.2.1 Project and Sampling Descriptions
Examples of <projectDesc> and <samplingDesc>:

<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990.</p>
  </projectDesc>
</encodingDesc>

<encodingDesc>
  <samplingDecl>
    <p>Samples of 2000 words taken from the beginning of the text</p>
  </samplingDecl>
</encodingDesc>

19.2.2 Editorial Declarations
The <editorialDecl> contains a prose description of the practices used when encoding the text. Typically this description should cover such topics as the following, each of which may conveniently be given as a separate paragraph.

<correction> how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.</correction>

<normalization> the extent to which the original source has been regularized or normalized.</normalization>

<quote> what has been done with quotation marks in the original – have they been retained or replaced by entity references, are opening and closing quotes distinguished, etc.</quote>

<hyphenation> what has been done with hyphens (especially end-of-line hyphens) in the original – have they been retained, replaced by entity references, etc.</hyphenation>

<segmentation> how has the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.</segmentation>

<interpretation> what analytic or interpretive information has been added to the text.  

Example:

<editorialDecl>
  <p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and has not been checked.</p>
  <p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling checker.</p>
  <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using Webster's 9th Collegiate dictionary.</p>
</editorialDecl>
19.2.3 Reference and Classification Declarations

The `<refsDecl>` element is used to document the way in which any standard referencing scheme built into the encoding works. In its simplest form, it consists of prose description.

Example:

```xml
<refsDecl>
  <p>The `<att>` attribute on each `<gi>` tag contains the canonical reference for each division in the form XX.yyy where XX is the book number in roman numeral and yyy is the section number in arabic.</p>
  <p>Milestone tags refer to the edition of 1830 as E30 and that of 1850 as E50.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

The `<classDecl>` element groups together definitions or sources for any descriptive classification schemes used by other parts of the header. At least one such scheme must be provided, encoded using the following elements:

- `<taxonomy>` defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.
- `<bibl>` (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- `<category>` contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.
- `<catDesc>` (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc.

In the simplest case, the taxonomy may be defined by a bibliographic reference, as in the following example:

```xml
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LC-SH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

Alternatively, or in addition, the encoder may define a special purpose classification scheme, as in the following example:

```xml
<taxonomy xml:id="B">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="B.A">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="B.A1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="B.A3">
    <catDesc>National</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```
Linkage between a particular text and a category within such a taxonomy is made by means of the `<catRef/>` element within the `<textClass>` element, as described in the next section below.

### 19.3 The Profile Description

The `<profileDesc>` element enables information characterizing various descriptive aspects of a text to be recorded within a single framework. It has three optional components:

- `<creation>` contains information about the creation of a text.
- `<langUsage>` (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.
- `<textClass>` (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

The `<creation>` element is useful for documenting where a work was created, even though it may not have been published or recorded there.

Example:

```
<creation>
  <date when="1992-08">August 1992</date>
  <name type="place">Taos, New Mexico</name>
</creation>
```

The `<langUsage>` element is useful where a text contains many different languages. It may contain `<language>` elements to document each particular language used:

```
<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```
The \texttt{<textClass>} element classifies a text. This may be done with reference to a classification system locally defined by means of the \texttt{<classDecl>} element, or by reference to some externally defined established scheme such as the Universal Decimal Classification. Texts may also be classified using lists of keywords, which may themselves be drawn from locally or externally defined control lists. The following elements are used to supply such classifications:

\texttt{<classCode>} (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

\texttt{<catRef/>} (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

\texttt{<keywords>} contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

The simplest way of classifying a text is by means of the \texttt{<classCode>} element. For example, a text with classification 410 in the Universal Decimal Classification might be documented as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
\end{verbatim}

When a classification scheme has been locally defined using the \texttt{<taxonomy>} element discussed in the preceding subsection, the \texttt{<catRef/>} element should be used to reference it. To continue the earlier example, a work classified in the Brown Corpus as \texttt{Press reportage - Sunday} and also as \texttt{Religion} might be documented as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
<catRef target="#B.A3 #B.D"/>
\end{verbatim}

The element \texttt{<keywords>} contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. As usual, the attribute \texttt{scheme} identifies the source from which these terms are taken. For example, if the LC Subject Headings are used, following declaration of that classification system in a \texttt{<taxonomy>} element as above:

\begin{verbatim}
<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <list>
      <item>English literature -- History and criticism -- Data processing.</item>
      <item>English literature -- History and criticism -- Theory etc.</item>
      <item>English language -- Style -- Data processing.</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
\end{verbatim}

Multiple classifications may be supplied using any of the mechanisms described in this section.

### 19.4 The Revision Description

The \texttt{<revisionDesc>} element provides a change log in which each change made to a text may be recorded. The log may be recorded as a sequence of \texttt{<change>} elements each of which contains a brief description of the change. The attributes \texttt{when} and \texttt{who} may be used to identify when the change was carried out and the agency responsible for it.

Example:

\begin{verbatim}
<revisionDesc>
  <change when="1991-03-06" who="#EMB">File format updated</change>
  <change when="1990-05-25" who="#EMB">Stuart's corrections entered</change>
</revisionDesc>
\end{verbatim}
In a production environment it will usually be found preferable to use some kind of automated system to track and record changes. Many such version control systems, as they are known, can also be configured to update the TEI Header of a file automatically.
A List of Elements Described

The TEI Lite schema is a pure subset of TEI P5. In the following list of elements and classes used, some information, notably the examples, derives from the canonical definition for the element in TEI P5 and may therefore refer to elements or attributes not provided by TEI Lite. Note however that only the elements listed here are available within the TEI Lite schema. These specifications also refer to many attributes which although available in TEI Lite are not discussed in this tutorial for lack of space.

A.1 Elements

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element. [15.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
att.global.analytic (@ana)
att.global.facs (@facs)

Contained by

core: teiCorpus
May contain
header: teiHeader
textstructure: text

Declaration

```
<TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5 version using a name space.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
</TEI>
```

Schematron <s:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <s:ns prefix="xs" uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>

Schematron <s:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

Example

```
<TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5 version using a name space.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
</TEI>
```
This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.

Note This element is required.

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.5.5.]

Module core

Attributes 
- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.source (@source)
- att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@type allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Note The type attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see PETTY

Member of model.choicePart, model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

- analysis:
  - pc
  - s
  - w

- core:
  - abbr
  - add
  - addrLine
  - author
  - bibl
  - biblScope
  - choice
  - corr
  - date
  - del
  - desc
  - editor
  - emph
  - expan
  - foreign
  - gloss
  - head
  - hi
  - item
  - l
  - label
  - mentioned
  - name
  - note
  - num
  - orig
  - pb
  - ptr
  - ref
  - reg
  - resp
  - rs
  - sic
  - soCalled
  - speaker
  - stage
  - term
  - title
  - unclear

- figures:
  - cell
  - figDesc

- header:
  - authority
  - catDesc
  - change
  - classCode
  - creation
  - distributor
  - edition
  - extent
  - funder
  - language
  - licence
  - principal
  - sponsor

- linking:
  - seg

- tagdocs:
  - eg

- textstructure:
  - byline
  - closer
  - dateline
  - docAuthor
  - docDate
  - docEdition
  - docImprint
  - imprimatur
  - opener
  - salute
  - signed
  - titlePart
  - trailer

May contain

- analysis:
  - interp
  - interpGrp
  - pc
  - s
  - w

- core:
  - abbr
  - add
  - address
  - choice
  - corr
  - date
  - del
  - emph
  - expan
  - foreign
  - gap
  - gloss
  - graphic
  - hi
  - index
  - lb
  - mentioned
  - milestone
  - name
  - note
  - num
  - orig
  - pb
  - ptr
  - ref
  - reg
  - resp
  - rs
  - sic
  - soCalled
  - term
  - time
  - title
  - unclear

56
Declaration

```

element abbr\newline
{\newline
  att.global.attributes,\newline
  att.responsibility.attributes,\newline
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,\newline
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,\newline
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<choice>
  <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan>
  <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>
```

```
<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>
```

Note The `<abbr>` tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but expanded silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3, ]

Module core

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.transcriptional` (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq)
- `att.editLike` (@evidence, @instant)
- `att.dimensions` (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)
- `att.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.source` (@source)
- `att.placement` (@place)
- `att.typed` (@type, @subtype)

Member of `model.pPart.transcriptional`

Contained by

- analysis: `pc sw`
- core: `abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cor date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear`
- figures: `cell`
- header: `change distributor edition extent licence`
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
  imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
  graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb
tpl ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
<element add newline
  {newline
    att.global.attributes, newline
    att.transcriptional.attributes, newline
    att.placement.attributes, newline
    att.typed.attributes, newline
    macro.paraContent}
```

Example

The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences of these facts from which this tale takes its title.

Note In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the `add` element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the `corr` or `supplied` element are recommended. In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of `add` may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

`<addrLine>` (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.5.2, 2.2.4, 3.11.2.4]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs))
Member of model.addrPart
Contained by
core: address
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
Declaration

`<address>`

core: `abbr add address choice corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi`
`index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term`
`time title unclear`

figures: `figure formula`

tagdocs: `att code gid ident val`

Example

```xml
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Note Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the `model.addrPart` class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an `<address>` element directly but may be wrapped within an `<addrLine>` if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

`<address>` contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.5.2 2.2.4 3.11.2.4]

Module `core`

Attributes: `att.global (xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)`
` (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))`
` (att.global.facs (@facs))`

Member of `model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail`

Contained by:

- analysis: `ils`

- core: `abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date desc editor emph expand foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear`

- figures: `cell figDesc`

- header: `authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor`

- linking: `seg`

- tagdocs: `eg`

- textstructure: `byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer`
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: addrLine gap index lb milestone name note pb rs
figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor

Declaration

```
element address
{newline
  att.global.attributes,
  { model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart ), model.global* )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <name>Bologna</name>
  <name n="I">Italy</name>
</address>
```

Note  This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element
<addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements
available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

```
<anchor/>
```

(anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not
it corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. 16.4.]

Module  linking

Attributes

```
att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space )
att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )
att.global.analytic ( @ana )
att.global.facs ( @facs )
att.typed ( @type, @subtype )
```

Member of  model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

```
core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list listBibl mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title
unclear
figures: cell figure table
header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence
principal sponsor
linking: seg
```
<argument>

contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. [4.2, 4.6]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by core: lg list

figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp
core: bibl cit desc gap head index label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage

figures: figure table
linking: anchor
tagdocs: eg

Declaration

element argument

{newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
  (( model.global | model.headLike )*, (( model.common ), model.global*)+) newline
}

Example

<argument>

Monte Video – Maldonado – Excursion
to R Polanco – Lazo and Bolas – Partridges –
Absence of Trees – Deer – Capybara, or River Hog –
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Tucutuco — Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits — Tyrant Flycatcher — Mocking-bird — Carrion Hawks — Tubes formed by Lightning — House struck</p>

Note Often contains either a list or a paragraph

<att> (attribute) contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text. [22]

Module tagdocs
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
@scheme supplies an identifier for the scheme in which this name is defined.
Status Optional

Datatype [data.enumerated]
Sample values include: TEI (text encoding initiative) this attribute is part of the TEI scheme.[Default]
DBK (docbook) this attribute is part of the Docbook scheme.
XX (unknown) this attribute is part of an unknown scheme.
imaginary the attribute is from a non-existent scheme, for illustrative purposes only
XHTML the attribute is part of the XHTML language
XML the attribute is part of the XML language
XI the attribute is defined in the xInclude schema

Member of model.phrase.xml

Declaration

element att
{att.global.attributes,\newline
 attribute scheme { data.enumerated }?,\newline
 data.name}

Example

62
The TEI defines several so-called global attributes; their names include xml:id, rend, xml:lang, xml:space, and xml:base; scheme="XX">type</att> is not amongst them.

Note A namespace prefix may be used in order to specify the scheme as an alternative to specifying it via the scheme attribute: it takes precedence.

<author>

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.respLike

Contained by bibl header: editionStmt titleStmt

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref regs rs sic soCalled term
time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

{newline
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

Example

<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de (1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author>
  <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and
  <persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
  <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting</orgName>
</author>
Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.

Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

### `<authority>`

*(release authority)* supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4.]

**Module header**

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core Attributes</th>
<th>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>linking</td>
<td>att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>analytic</td>
<td>att.global.analytic (@ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facs</td>
<td>att.global.facs (@facs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declarable</td>
<td>att.declarable (@default)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Member of** model.publicationStmtPart.agency

**Contained by**

- header: publicationStmt

**May contain**

- analysis: interp interpGrp
- core: abbr address choice date emph expn foreign gap gloss hi index lb lbx mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title
- figures: figure
- header: idno
- linking: anchor
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

**Declaration**

```xml
<authority> element authority { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

**Example**

```xml
<authority>John Smith</authority>
```

### `<availability>`

supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4.]

**Module header**

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core Attributes</th>
<th>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>linking</td>
<td>att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>analytic</td>
<td>att.global.analytic (@ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facs</td>
<td>att.global.facs (@facs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>declarable</td>
<td>att.declarable (@default)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```xml
<availability> ...
```
<availability>

@status supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

Status: Optional

Datatype: data.enumerated

Legal values are: free the text is freely available.

unknown the status of the text is unknown [Default]

restricted the text is not freely available.

Member of: model.biblPart, model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by:
core: bibl
header: publicationStmt

May contain:
core: p
header: licence

Declaration:

element availability
{\newline
att.global.attributes,\newline
att.declarable.attributes,\newline
attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,\newline
(model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+\newline
}

Example:

<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>

Example:

<availability>
  <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
    <p>The MIT License applies to this document.</p>
    <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
    <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining
    a copy
    of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"),
    to deal
    in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the
    rights
    to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or
    sell
    copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is
    furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>
    <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be
    included in
    all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>
    <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND,
    EXPRESS OR
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF
MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT
SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER
LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM,
OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN
THE SOFTWARE.</p>
</license>
</availability>

Note A consistent format should be adopted

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

4.7 4. ]
Module textstructure
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana)
att.global.facs (@facs) att.declaring (@decls)

Contained by
textstructure: text

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: divGen gap head index lb list milestone note p pb
figures: figure table
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

Declaration

```xml
<element back>
newline
att.global.attributes,
newline
att.declaring.attributes,
newline
(model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.pLike | model.listLike | model.global)*
newline
(model.div1Like),
newline
(model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global)*
newline
(model.divBottomPart",
newline
(model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global)*
newline
(model.divBottomPart | model.global)*?)
```
Example

```
<back>
<div type="appendix">
<head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
<p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature</p>
</div>
<div type="epistle">
<head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
<salute>Sir.</salute>
<p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if
you please</p>
</div>
<div type="advert">
<head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these
and are sold at Mr
Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
<list>
  <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
  <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
  <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers
of all Nations,
10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
</list>
</div>
<div type="advert">
<head>By the KING's Royal Patent</head>
<list>
  <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles,
Colds, &c.
2s. 6d</item>
  <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
</list>
</div>
</back>
```

Note The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the
facts of cultural history.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence sourceDesc taxonomy
linking: seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg relatedItem respStmt rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure
header: availability distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code ident

Declaration

element bibl\newline
{\newline
  att.global.attributes,\newline
  att.declarable.attributes,\newline
  att.typed.attributes,\newline
  att.sortable.attributes,\newline
  att.docStatus.attributes,\newline
  }\newline
  (text
   model.gLike   |   model.highlighted   |   model.pPart.data   |   model.pPart.edit   |   )

Example

<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>

Example

<bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.<br/>
  <publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>
</bibl>

Example

<bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter"
xml:id="carlin_2003">
  <author>
    <name>
      <surname>Carlin</surname>
      (<forename>Claire</forename>)
    </name>
  </author>,
  <title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France’s last congrès</title> dans
</bibl type="monogr>
Note: Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the biblPart class.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Declaration

```
 element biblScope
 { newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
  att.citing.attributes, newline
  attribute type
 { newline
    "vol" | "issue" | "pp" | "ll" | "chap" | "part" | xsd:Name
 }, newline
 macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<biblScope> pp 12–34 </biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page" from="12" to="34"/>
<biblScope unit="volume">II </biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page"> 12 </biblScope>
```

Note When a single page is being cited, use the from and to attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the from attribute should be used without to. For example, if the citation has p. 3ff as a page reference.

```
<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. ]
```

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
 (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declaring (@decls)

Contained by

textstructure: text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit desc divGen gap head index lb lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q

sp stage

figures: figure table

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener

postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```
 element body
 { newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
```

70
att.declaring.attributes,{newline
  )newline
model.global*,newline
( ( model.divTop ), ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,newline
( ( model.divGenLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,newline
(newline
( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+newline
| ( ( model.div1Like ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+newline
| (newline
  ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,newline
  newline
  ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+newline
  newline
  ( ( model.div1Like ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+newline
)newline
),newline
( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
ewline
newline
<byline>

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2, 4.5]

Module textstructure
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
  core: lg list
  figures: figure table
  textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain
  analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
  core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
  index lb mentioned milestone name note num prig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term
  time title unclear
  figures: figure formula
  header: idno
  linking: anchor seg
  tagdocs: att code gi ident val
  textstructure: docAuthor

Declaration

  element byline
  {newline
    att.global.attributes,newline
    ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global )*newline
  }

Example
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example

<byleine>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the while in London. Never made publick before.</byleine>

Example

<byleine>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byleine>

Example

<byleine>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byleine>

Example

<byleine>BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT</docAuthor>,
Master of Arts,
(Sometimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byleine>

Note The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document’s author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text ontology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc. [2.3.7]  

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))

Contained by
header: category
May contain
core: abbr, address, choice, date, emph, expant, foreign, gloss, hi, mentioned, name, num, ptr, ref, rs, soCalled, term, time, title
header: idno
tagdocs: att, code, ident, val

Declaration
element catDesc\newline
{\newline
    att.global.attributes,\newline
    ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.catDescPart )*\newline
}

Example

<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>

Example

<catDesc>
<textDesc n="novel"
<catRef/>

(category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3. ]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

@scheme identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.
Status Optional
Datatype data.pointer

Contained by: textClass
May contain Empty element
Declaration

element catRef
{newline
  att.global.attributes,\newline
  att.pointing.attributes,\newline
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,\newline
  empty\newline}

Example

<catRef scheme="#myTopics"
  target="#news #prov #sales2"/>
</!-- elsewhere -->
<taxonomy xml:id="myTopics">
  <category xml:id="news">
    <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="prov">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="sales2">
    <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Note The scheme attribute need be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared.

<typename> contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Contained by header: category taxonomy
May contain core: desc gloss
header: catDesc category

Declaration

element category
{newline
   att.global.attributes,
   ( ( catDesc+ | ( model.descLike | model.glossLike )* ), category* )
}

Example

<category xml:id="b1">
   <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>

Example

<category xml:id="b2">
   <catDesc>Prose</catDesc>
   <category xml:id="b11">
      <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>
   </category>
   <category xml:id="b12">
      <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
   </category>
</category>

Example

<category xml:id="LIT">
   <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>
   <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>
   <category xml:id="LPROSE">
      <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>
   </category>
   <category xml:id="LPOETRY">
      <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
   </category>
   <category xml:id="LDRAMA">
      <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc>
   </category>
</category>
**Module** figures

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global</td>
<td>@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.linking</td>
<td>@corresp, @next, @prev</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.analytic</td>
<td>@ana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.facs</td>
<td>@facs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.tableDecoration</td>
<td>@role, @rows, @cols</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Contained by** figures: row

**May contain** analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

**core:** abbr add address bibl choice cit cor corr desc del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index i label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q reg rs sic so Called sp stage term time title unclear

**figures:** figure formula table

**header:** idno

**linking:** anchor seg

**tagdocs:** att code eg gi ident val

**Declaration**

```xml
<cell>
  element cell
  newline
  {newline
    att.global.attributes, newline
    att.tableDecoration.attributes, newline
  macro.specialPara}
</cell>
```

**Example**

```xml
<row role="label">General conduct</row>
<cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>
```

**Module** header

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.ascribed</td>
<td>@who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.datable</td>
<td>@calendar, @period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.datable.w3c</td>
<td>@when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.docStatus</td>
<td>@status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global</td>
<td>@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.linking</td>
<td>@corresp, @next, @prev</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.analytic</td>
<td>@ana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.facs</td>
<td>@facs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.typed</td>
<td>@type, @subtype</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**@target** points to one or more elements that belong to this change.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Declaration

element change\newline
{\newline
 att.ascribed.attributes,\newline
 att.datable.attributes,\newline
 att.docStatus.attributes,\newline
 att.global.attributes,\newline
 att.typed.attributes,\newline
 attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,\newline
 macro.specialPara}

Example

<titleStmt>
 <title> ... </title>
<editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
<respStmt xml:id="BZ">
 <resp>copy editing</resp>
 <name>Brett Zamir</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>

<revisionDesc status="published">
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02" status="public">Finished chapter 23</change>
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02" status="draft">Finished chapter 2</change>
 <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21" who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
 <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>

Example

<profileDesc>
 <creation>
 <listChange xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</listChange>
 <change xml:id="DRAFT2" notBefore="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly using green ink</change>
 <change xml:id="DRAFT3" notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as supplied to printer.</change>
 </listChange>
</creation>
</profileDesc>
Note The who attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The status attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.4]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @a, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
Member of model.pPart.editorial
Contained by
analysis: pcs w
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
May contain
core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear
linking: seg
Declaration

```
  element choice { att.global.attributes, ( model.choicePart | choice )* }
```

Example An American encoding of *Gulliver’s Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
</choice> of our subjects, with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our <choice>
  <orig>favour</orig>
  <reg>favor</reg>
</choice>.
</p>
```

Note Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1 should be preferred.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. 4.3.1. 9.3.5.1]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by
core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence
linking: seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: bibl cit gap index lb listBibl milestone note pb ptr q ref figures: figure linking: anchor tagdocs: eg

Declaration

```
<cit>
<quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an insupportable smell,
    as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
<bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>
```

Example
<classCode>

<orth>horrifier</orth>
</form>
<cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
<quote>to horrify</quote>
</cit>
<cit type="example">
<quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
<cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
<quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
</cit>
</cit>
</entry>

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3.]

Module header
Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana)
att.global.facs (@facs)
@scheme identifies the classification system in use, as defined by for example by a <taxonomy> element, or some other resource.
Status Required
Datatype data.pointer

Contained by: textClass
May contain: interp interpGrp
analysis: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title
figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration
element classCode
newline
{newline
att.global.attributes, newline
attribute scheme { data.pointer }, newline
macro.phraseSeq.limited}

Example
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. 2.3.]
Module header
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)

Member of `model.encodingDescPart`

Contained by

- header: `encodingDesc`

May contain

- header: `taxonomy`

Declaration

```xml
element classDecl { att.global.attributes, taxonomy+ }
```

Example

```xml
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>

<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term>Political science</term>
    <term>United States -- Politics and government -- Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

Module `textstructure`

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)

Member of `model.divBottomPart`

Contained by

- `lg` list

May contain

- `inter` interp `interpGrp` `pc` `s` `w` `core` `abbr` `add` `address` `choice` `corr` `date` `del` `emph` `expan` `foreign` `gloss` `graphic` `hi` `index` `lb` `mentioned` `milestone` `name` `note` `num` `orig` `pb` `ptr` `ref` `reg` `rs` `sic` `soCalled` `time` `title` `unclear` `figures` `figure` `formula`
- `header` `idno`
- `linking` `anchor` `seg`
- `tagdocs` `att` `code` `gi` `ident` `val`
- `textstructure` `dateline` `salute` `signed`

Declaration

```
```
Example

```xml
div type="letter">
  p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
  closer>
  salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
  signed>H. Colburn</signed>
</closer>
</div>
```

Example

```xml
div type="chapter">
  p> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  dateline>
  name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
  date>1914–1921</date>
  closer>
</dateline>
</closer>
</div>
```

`<code>` contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

Attributes

```
att.global.attributes (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
att.global.facs (@facs)
```

@lang (formal language) a name identifying the formal language in which the code is expressed

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

Member of `model.emphLike`

Contained by `analysis: 8`

```
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan
    foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace
    publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
    language licence principal sponsor
linking: seg
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
{ att.global.attributes, attribute lang { data.word }?, text }
```

Example

```
<code lang="JAVA"> Size fCheckbox1Size = new Size();
fCheckbox1Size.Height = 500;
fCheckbox1Size.Width = 500;
xCheckbox1.setSize(fCheckbox1Size);
</code>
```

**<corr>** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.4.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike (evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,
@quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,
@max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))
att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan
foreign gloss head hi item1 label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace
publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb
ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration
Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, `<corr>` may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how can we prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the `<choice>` and `<sic>` elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how can we prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

<creation> contains information about the creation of a text.  

**Module** header

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)

**Member of** `model.profileDescPart`

**Contained by** `header: profileDesc`

**May contain** `core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gloss hi mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title`

**Declaration**

```
element creation
{
    newLine
        att.global.attributes,
        att.datable.attributes,
        ( text | model.limitedPhrase | listChange )*newLine
}
```

**Example**

```
<creation>
     <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>
```

Example
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<creation>
<date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>

Note The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text’s creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest. It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication.

<date> contains a date in any format. [3.54. 2.24. 2.5. 3.11.24. 15.2.3. 13.3.6.]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic ( @ana))
(att.global.facs ( @facs)) att.datable ( @calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c ( @when))
att.editLike ( @evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions ( @unit, @quantity, @extent,
@precision, @scope) (att.ranging ( @atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)))
(att.responsibility ( @cert, @resp) (att.source ( @source))) att.typed ( @type,
@subtype)

Member of model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contain by

analysis: 

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan
foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pb ptr ref resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal publicationStmt sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref resp rs sic soCalled term
time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

element date
newline

att.global.attributes, newline
att.datable.attributes, newline
contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2.]

Example
date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>

Example
Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>

Example
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example

<div type="chapter">
<p>
<!---- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
</closer>
</dateline>

<name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris</name>
<date>1914–1921</date>
</dateline>
</closer>
</div>

<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or
otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe,
or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3. ]

Module core
Attributes

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

May contain

Declaration

element del

{newline
att.global.attributes,
att.transcriptional.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
macro.paracContent}

Example

<l>
<del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
<del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
weht der Wind
</l>

Example

<del rend="overstrike">
<gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"
unit="character"/>
</del>

Note This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single
words or phrases. The <delSpan> element should be used for longer sequences of
text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing
overlapping additions and deletions. The text deleted must be at least partially
legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a
<supplied> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the
<gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no
longer visible. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much
text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the
<unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of
primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read
with confidence in a similar way.

Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was
intended may be indicated by use of the <certainty> element (see 21.).

There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del> and <surplus> on the one
hand and <gap> or <unclear> on the other. <del> indicates a deletion present in
the source being transcribed, which states the author’s or a later scribe’s intent to
cancel or remove text. <surplus> indicates material present in the source being
transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <gap> or
<unclear>, by contrast, signal an editor’s or encoder’s decision to omit something or
their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. and 11.3.3.2. for the
relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

<desc> (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent
element, including its intended usage, purpose, or application where this is
appropriate. [22.4.1. ]

Module core Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.translatable (@versionDate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Member of model.descLike model.labelLike

Contained by

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: add corr del desc emph gap graphic head hi item lg note orig p q ref reg sic stage
title unclear

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: category change licence taxonomy

linking: seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl
mentioned name num ptr q ref rs soCalled stage term time title

figures: table

header: idno

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element desc
{newline
 att.global.attributes,
 newline
 att.translatable.attributes,
 newline
 att.typed.attributes,
 newline
 macro.limitedContent}
```

Example

```
<desc>contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an element, attribute,
attribute value, class, or entity.</desc>
```

Note TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.

<code>distributor></code> supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by

core: bib

header: publicationStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled stage
time title unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```xml
<element distributor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }>

Example

```xml
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>
```

<div>
(text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.typed (@type, @subtype)
- att.declaring (@decls)

Member of model.divLike

Contained by

- textstructure: back body div front

May contain

- analysis: interp interpGrp
- core: bibl cit desc divGen gap head index label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage
- figures: figure table
- linking: anchor
- tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```xml
<element div
newline
\att.global.attributes,\newline
\att.divLike.attributes,\newline
\att.typed.attributes,\newline
\att.declaring.attributes,\newline
(\newline
\att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev), \newline
\att.global.analytic (@ana), \newline
\att.global.facs (@facs), \newline
\att.typed (@type, @subtype), \newline
\att.declaring (@decls)\newline
))?
```

89
Example

```xml
<body>
  <div type="part">
    <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
    <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
  </div>
  <div n="1" type="chapter">
    <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
    <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest happiness of the greatest number....</p>
  </div>
  <div n="1.1" type="section">
    <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
    <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to authority ...</p>
  </div>
  <div n="1.2" type="section">
    <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
    <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when...</p>
  </div>
</body>
```

<code>divGen</code> (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear. [3.8.2]

Module core

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)

@type specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Sample values include: index an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.

- toc a table of contents
- figlist a list of figures
- tablist a list of tables

Note Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive.

Member of **model.divGenLike** **model.frontPart**

Contained by

textstructure: back body div front

May contain
Example One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the indexName attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

```xml
<back>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Bibliography</head>
  </div1>
  <!.. ..... -->
</back>

<back>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Indices</head>
    <divGen n="Index Nominum" type="NAMES"/>
    <divGen n="Index Rerum" type="THINGS"/>
  </div1>
</back>
```

Example Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

```xml
<front>
  <!..<titlePage>...</titlePage>..>
  <divGen type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
    <p> ... </p>
  </div>
</front>
```

Note This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software.

(document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6]
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig ph ptr ref reg rs sic so-called term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

element docAuthor
{newline
 att.global.attributes,\newline
 att.canonical.attributes,\newline
 macro.phraseSeq}

Example

<titlePage>
<docTitle>
<titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four Parts.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
<byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon, and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>

Note The document author’s name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it.

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [4.6 ]

Module textstructure
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
@when gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

Status Optional

Datatype data[temporal.w3c

Note For simple dates, the when attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in one of the formats specified in XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
core: lg list
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body dateline div docImprint front group titlePage

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

element docDate
{ newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
  attribute when { data.temporal.w3c }?, newline
  macro.phraseSeq}

Example

<docImprint> Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate> </docImprint>

Note Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it.


Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlePagePart

Contained by textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

Example
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Note Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.


<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure
Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global/analytics (@ana))
(att.global/facs (@facs))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlePagePart

Contained by

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg rs sic so Called term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

textstructure: docDate

Declaration

```xml
<docImprint>


Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

<docImprint>
<pubPlace> London </pubPlace>
Printed for <name> E. Nutt </name>,
at
<pubPlace> Royal Exchange </pubPlace>;
<name> J. Roberts </name> in
<pubPlace> wick-Lane </pubPlace>;
<name> A. Dodd </name> without
<pubPlace> Temple-Bar </pubPlace>;
and <name> J. Graves </name> in
<pubPlace> St. James's-street. </pubPlace>
```

94
<docTitle>

1722.<
</docImprint>

Note Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

(document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6 ]

Module textstructure
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)
Member of model.pLike.front model.titlePagePart
Contained by
textstructure: back front titlePage
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: gap index lb milestone note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: titlePart
Declaration

element docTitle
{newline
   att.global.attributes,
   att.canonical.attributes,
   ( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )\newline
}

Example

<docTitle>
<titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
<titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

<edition> describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [2.2.2 ]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
Member of model.biblPart
Contained by
core: bibl
header: editionStmt
May contain
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

```
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term
time: title unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
```

Declaration
```
<edition>
</edition>
```

```
<editionStmt>
<respStmt>
<resp>Adapted by </resp>
<name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
</respStmt>
</editionStmt>
```

Example
```
<p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date></p>
```

96
<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.11.2.2.]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.respLike
Contained by
core: bibl
header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice corr date emph expan gap gloss graphic hi
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term
time title unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```xml
<editor>

Example

<editor>Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="Illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>

Note A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3., 2.3., 15.3.2.]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart
Contained by
header: encodingDesc

May contain

97
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

core: \p

Declaration

\begin{verbatim}
element editorialDecl
{ newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
  att.declarable.attributes, newline
  ( model.pLike | model.editorialDeclPart )+, newline
}
\end{verbatim}

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization>
    <p> All words converted to Modern American spelling using Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary </p>
  </normalization>
  <quotation marks="all">
    <p> All opening quotation marks converted to " all closing quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
  </quotation>
</editorialDecl>
\end{verbatim}

\eg \hfill \hfill (example) contains any kind of illustrative example. [22.4.4, 22.4.5, ]

Module tagdocs

Attributes

\begin{itemize}
\item att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
\item att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
\item att.global.analytic (@ana)
\item att.global.facs (@facs)
\end{itemize}

Member of \model.egLike

Contained by

core: \add \cit \corr \del \desc \emph \head \hi \item \note \orig \p \q \ref \reg \sic \stage \title \unclear

figures: \cell \figDesc \figure

header: \change \licence

linking: \seg

textstructure: \argument \body \div \docEdition \epigraph \imprimatur \postscript \salute \signed \titlePart \trailer

May contain

analysis: \interp \interpGrp \pe \s \w

core: \abbr \add \address \choice \corr \date \del \desc \emph \expan \foreign \gap \gloss \graphic \hi \index \lb \mentioned \milestone \name \note \num \orig \pb \ptr \ref \reg \rs \sic \soCalled \term \time \title \unclear

figures: \figure \formula

header: \idno

linking: \anchor \seg

tagdocs: \att \code \gi \ident \val

Declaration

\begin{verbatim}
element eg { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
\end{verbatim}

Example
The `<gi>` element is declared using the following syntax:

```xml
<!ELEMENT term (%phrase.content;)>]
```

Note If the example contains material in XML markup, either it must be enclosed within a CDATA marked section, or character entity references must be used to represent the markup delimiters. If the example contains well-formed XML, it should be marked using the more specific `<egXML>` element.

`(emphasized)` marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [3.3.2.2, 3.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
`att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)) `att.global.analytic` (@ana))
`att.global.facs` (@facs))

Member of `model.emphLike`

Contained by

analysis: `s`

core: `abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear`

figures: `cell figDesc`

header: `authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor`

linking: `seg`

tagdocs: `eg`

textstructure: `byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer`

May contain

analysis: `interp interpGrp pc s w`

core: `abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear`

figures: `figure formula table`

header: `idno`

linking: `anchor seg`

tagdocs: `att code eg gi ident val`

Declaration

```xml
<emph>
<element emph { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }>
```

Example

You took the car and did `<emph>what</emph>`?!!

Example
<q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said.

<emph>What does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3, 2.1.1.]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global/analytic (@ana))
(att.global/facs (@facs))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart
Contained by header: teiHeader
May contain core: p
header: classDecl editorialDecl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl

Declaration
element encodingDesc
{newline
att.global.attributes,
( ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+ )
}

Example
<encodingDesc>
<p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No formatting or layout information preserved.</p>
</encodingDesc>

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3, 4.2, 4.6.]

Module textstructure
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global/analytic (@ana))
(att.global/facs (@facs))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
core: lg list
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
element epigraph { att.global.attributes, ( model.common | model.global])* }

Example

<epigraph xml:lang="la">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>

(expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.5.5.]

Module core
Attributes
  att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
  (att.global.facs (@facs))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope))
  (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
  (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.source (@source))

Member of
  model.choicePart
  model.pPart.editorial

Contained by
  analysis:
    pc s w

core:
  abbr add address author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig pb ptr ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures:
  cell figDesc

header:
  authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking:
  seg

tagdocs:
  eg

textstructure:
  byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
  imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
analysis:
  interp interpGrp pc s w

core:
  abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg resp rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures:
  figure formula

header:
  idno

linking:
  anchor seg

tagdocs:
  att code gi ident val
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Declaration

```
<element expan
{newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
  att.editLike.attributes, newline
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
The address is Southmoor <choice>
  <expan>Ro</expan><abbr>d</abbr>
  </choice>
```

Example

```
<expan xml:lang="la">
  <abbr>Imp</abbr>
  <ex>erator</ex>
</expan>
```

Note  The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The `<ex>` element provided by the `transcr` module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

`<extent>` describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.  [2.2.3, 2.2.3.11.2.4, 10.7.1]

Module  header

Attributes  Attributes  `att.global`  (`@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space`)
```
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs))
```

Member of  model.biblPart

Contained by  bibl

header:  `fileDesc`

May contain  interp interpGrp pc s w

 core:  `abbr, add, address, choice, corr, date, del, emph, expan, foreign, gap, gloss, graphic, hi, index, lb, mentioned, milestone, name, note, num, orig, pb, ptr, ref, reg, rs, sic, soCalled, term, time, title, unclear`

figures:  `figure, formula`

header:  `idno`

linking:  `anchor, seg`

tagdocs:  `att, code, gi, ident, val`

Declaration

```
<element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```
Example The <measure> element may be used to supplied normalised or machine
 tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.

Example The <measure> element may be used to supplied normalised or machine
 tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.

Example The <measure> element may be used to supplied normalised or machine
 tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.

Example The <measure> element may be used to supplied normalised or machine
 tractable versions of the size or sizes concerned.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citi date del editor emph
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p
pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title
unclear

figures: cell figure table

header:
authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence
principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript
salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: bibl cit desc gap graphic head index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q
sp stage

figures: figDesc figure formula table

linking: anchor

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript

Declaration

\n\{\newline
\ \ \ \ \ att.global.attributes,\newline
\ \ \ \ \ att.placement.attributes,\newline
\ \ \ \ \ att.typed.attributes,\newline
\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \} \n
Example

<figure>
<head>The View from the Bridge</head>
<figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
<graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"
scale="0.5"/>
</figure>

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic
file. [2.2. 2.1.1. ]
Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
   (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
   (att.global.facs (@facs))

Contained by
header: teiHeader

May contain
header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Declaration

```
<fileDesc>

att.global.attributes,

<titleStmt>
<title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
</titleStmt>

<publicationStmt>
<p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
</publicationStmt>

<sourceDesc>
<p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
</sourceDesc>

</fileDesc>
```

Example

Note The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

<foreign> identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1] }
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Contained by analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan
gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term
time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration
element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Example

This is heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis philosophicus</foreign>?

Note The global xml:lang attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global xml:lang attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.
The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

<formula> contains a mathematical or other formula. [14.2] 

Module figures

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))

@notation names the notation used for the content of the element.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Member of model.graphicLike
<front>

Contained by

analysis: 

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss
   | head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs
   | sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figure formula table

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
   | imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

core: graphic hi

figures: formula

Declaration

```
(element formula
|\newline
|{\newline
|   att.global.attributes,\newline
|   attribute notation { data.enumerated }?,\newline
|   ( text | model.graphicLike | model.hiLike )^\newline
|})
```

Example

```
<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2$</formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi></formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="mathml">
  <m:math>
    <m:mi>E</m:mi>
    <m:mo>=</m:mo>
    <m:mi>m</m:mi>
    <m:msup>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mi>c</m:mi>
      </m:mrow>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mn>2</m:mn>
      </m:mrow>
    </m:msup>
  </m:math>
</formula>
```

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. 

Module textstructure
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declaring (@decls)

Contains by
textstructure: text

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: divGen gap head index lb milestone note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

Declaration

```
element front
{ newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
  att.declaring.attributes, newline
  ( newline
    ( ( model.frontPart | model.pLike | model.pLike.front | model.global )* ), newline
    ( newline
      ( newline
        model.div1Like, newline
        ( model.div1Like | model.frontPart | model.global )* newline
      ), newline
      ( newline
        model.divLike, newline
        ( model.divLike | model.frontPart | model.global )* newline
      )?, newline
      ( ( model.divBottom ), ( model.divBottom | model.global )* )? newline
    )? newline
  )? newline
}
```

Example

```xml
<front>
  <epigraph>
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:</quote>
    <q xml:lang="gr">Σίβυλλα τί θέλεις;</q>; respondebat illa: <q xml:lang="gr">ἀποθανεῖν θέλω.</q>
  </quote>
</epigraph>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
</front>
```

Example

```xml
<front>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
```
<div type="preface">
  <head>Author's Note</head>
  <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
  author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
  she has done so inadvertently.
  ...</p>
</div>

<funder>
(funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization
responsible for the funding of a project or text. [2.2.1]

Module header
Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @a, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs))
att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.respLike

Contained by
  core: bibl
  header: editionStmt, titleStmt

May contain
  analysis: interp, interpGrp
  core: abbr, address, choice, date, emph, expan, foreign, gap, gloss, hi, index, lb, mentioned
  milestone, name, note, num, pb, ptr, ref, rs, soCalled, term, time, title

figures: figure
  header: idno
  linking: anchor
  tagdocs: att, code, gi, ident, val

Declaration

  element funder
  {newline
   att.global.attributes, \newline
   att.canonical.attributes, \newline
   macro.phraseSeq.limited}

Example

  <funder>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal
  agency</funder>
  <funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European
  Communities</funder>
  <funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder>
  <funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of
  Canada</funder>

Note  Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from sponsors, who
  provide intellectual support and authority.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<gap> indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.4.3.

Module core
Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
att.global.analytic (@ana)
(att.global.facs (@facs))
att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)
(att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)
(att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
(att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) @source (@source))
@reason gives the reason for omission. Sample values include sampling, inaudible, irrelevant, cancelled.
Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.word separated by whitespace
@hand in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, indicates the hand which made the deletion.
Status Optional
Datatype data.pointer
@agent in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.
Status Optional
Datatype data.enumerated
Sample values include:
rubbing damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges
mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface
smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.global.edit

Core:
abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph
expan foreign gloss head hi item l label le label le label le label le label le label le label
list mentioned name note num orig n
pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title
unclear

Figures:
cell figure table

Header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence
principal sponsor

Linking: seg

Tagdocs: eg

Textstructure:
argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript
salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain:
core: desc

Declaration

| element gap\newline |
| {\newLine}
| att.global.attributes,\newline |
| att.editLike.attributes,\newline |
attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
( model.descLike | model.certLike )*

Example

```xml
<gap quantity="4" unit="chars"
  reason="illegible"/>
```

Example

```xml
<gap quantity="1" unit="essay"
  reason="sampling"/>
```

Example

```xml
<del><gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" unit="chars"
  reason="illegible"/>
</del>
```

Example

```xml
<gap extent="unknown" unit="lines"
  reason="lost"/>
```

Note  The `<gap>`, `<unclear>`, and `<del>` core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the `<damage>` and `<supplied>` elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2 for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The `<gap>` tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as `<del>` in the case of deliberate deletion.

`<gi>` (element name) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element. [22. 22.4.4]  

Module tagdocs

Attributes  Attributes

| att.global | (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space) |
| att.global.linking | (@corresp, @next, @prev) |
| att.global.analytic | (@ana) |
| att.global.facs | (@facs) |

@scheme supplies the name of the scheme in which this name is defined.

Status  Optional

Datatype  `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: TEI this element is part of the TEI scheme.[Default]  
                   DBK (docbook) this element is part of the Docbook scheme.  
                   XX (unknown) this element is part of an unknown scheme.  
                   Schematron this element is from Schematron.  
                   HTML this element is from the HTML scheme.

Member of  `model.phrase.xml`

Contained by
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

analysis: 

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc category change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain Character data only

Declaration

| element gi|newline
| newline
| att.global.attributes,\newline
| attribute scheme { data.enumerated }?,\newline
| data.name |

Example

<p>The <gi>xhtml:li</gi> element is roughly analogous to the <gi>item</gi> element, as is the <gi scheme="DBK">listItem</gi> element.</p>

This example shows the use of both a namespace prefix and the schema attribute as alternative ways of indicating that the gi in question is not a TEI element name: in practice only one should be adopted.

<gloss> identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase. [3.3.4. 22.4.1. ]

Module core

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)

att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)

att.global.analytic (@ana)

att.global.facs (@facs)

att.declaring (@decls)

att.translatable (@versionDate)

att.typed (@type, @subtype)

att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

att.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.emphLike model.glossLike

Contained by

analysis: 

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc category change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor taxonomy

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg
Example

We may define \texttt{<term xml:id="tdpv" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss target="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>}

Note The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

\texttt{<graphic>} indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure. [3.9]
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Declaration

```

element graphic\newline
{\newline
   att.global.attributes,\newline
   att.media.attributes,\newline
   att.resourced.attributes,\newline
   att.declaring.attributes,\newline
   model.descLike*\newline
}
```

Example

```
<figure>
    <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
    <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
    <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
    foreground, and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Note The `mimeType` attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the
image specified by the `url` attribute.

```
<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct

texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for

example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4] 4.3.1. 15.1.]
```

Module textstructure

Attributes
```
att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
   (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
   (att.global.analytic ( @ana))
   (att.global.facs ( @facs))
   att.declaring ( @decls)
   att.typed ( @type, @subtype)
```

Contained by
textstructure: group text

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: gap head index lb milestone note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener
   postscript salute signed text trailer

Declaration
```
element group\newline
{\newline
   att.global.attributes,\newline
   att.declaring.attributes,\newline
   att.typed.attributes,\newline
   ( model.divTop | model.global )*\newline
}
Example

```xml
<text>
  <!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->
  <front>
    <!-- biographical notice by editor -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
      <!-- first poem -->
      </text>
    </text>
    <!-- second poem -->
    </text>
  </group>
</text>
  <!-- end of Pope section-->
```

**<head>**

(heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.  [4.2.1.]

**Module core**

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>att.global attributes</th>
<th>att.typed attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(att.global.attributes, @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)</td>
<td>(att.typed.attributes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev), (att.global.analytic (@ana))</td>
<td>@type, @subtype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(att.global.facs (@facs))</td>
<td>@facs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Member of**

- model.headLike
- model.pLike.front

**Contained by**

- core: divGen, lg, list, listBibl
- figures: figure, table
- textstructure: argument, back, body, div, front, group, postscript

**May contain**

- analysis: interp, interpGrp, pc, s, w
- core: abbr, add, address, bibl, choice, cit, corr, date, del, desc, emph, expand, foreign, gap, gloss, graphic, hi, index, label, lb, lg, list, listBibl, mentioned, milestone, name, note, num, orig, pb, ptr, q, reg, rs, sic, soCalled, stage, term, time, title, unclear
- figures: figure, formula, table
- header: idno
- linking: anchor, seg
- tagdocs: att, code, eg, gi, ident, val

**Declaration**

```xml
element head

{newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
  att.typed.attributes, newline
  (newline
    text
    | lg | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.pLike | model...
Example The most common use for the `<head>` element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a `<trailer>`, as in this example:

```xml
<div1 n="I" type="book">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <div2 type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve years passed.</p>
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer>
  </div2>
</div1>
```

Example The `<head>` element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```xml
<br>
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
</list>
```

Note The `<head>` element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a `<head>` element based on its structural position. A `<head>` occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a `<div1>` is the title of that chapter or section.

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2] [3.3.2.]

Module core
Attributes:
| att.global | @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space |
| att.global.linking | @corresp, @next, @prev |
| att.global.analytic | @ana |
| att.global.facs | @facs |

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by:
| abbr | addrLine | author | bibl | biblScope | corr | date | desc | editor | empl | exp | foreign | gloss | head | hi | item | label | mentioned | name | note | num | orig | p | pubPlace | q | ref | reg | resp | rs | sic | soCalled | speaker | stage | term | time | title | unclear |

116
Example

<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesses</hi>
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...

(identifier) contains an identifier or name for an object of some kind in a formal language. <ident> is used for tokens such as variable names, class names, type names, function names etc. in formal programming languages. [22.1.1.]

Module tagdocs

Attributes

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: 

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor

linking: 

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain Character data only
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Declaration

\begin{verbatim}
element ident { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, text }
\end{verbatim}

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<ident type="namespace">http://www.tei-c.org/ns/Examples</ident>
\end{verbatim}

Note In running prose, this element may be used for any kind of identifier in any formal language. It should not be used for element and attribute names in XML, for which the special elements \texttt{<gi>} and \texttt{<att>} are provided.

\begin{verbatim}
<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.
\end{verbatim}

Module header

Attributes

\begin{verbatim}
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
att.global.analytic (@ana)
att.global.facs (@facs)
att.sortable (@sortKey)
\end{verbatim}

@type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

Status Optional

Datatype \[\text{data.enumerated}\]

Member of model.nameLike, model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: \[\text{abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item 1 label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear}\]

figures: \[\text{cell figDesc}\]

header: \[\text{authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder idno language licence principal publicationStmt seriesStmt sponsor}\]

linking: \[\text{seg}\]

tagdocs: \[\text{eg}\]

textstructure: \[\text{byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer}\]

May contain

header: \[\text{idno}\]

Declaration

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{verbatim}
element idno\newline
{\newline
  att.global.attributes,\newline
  att.sortable.attributes,\newline
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,\newline
  ( text | model.gLike | idno )}\newline
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

Example

118
In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym.

Note <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for type on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.

<imprimatur> contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [4.6.]

Module textstructure
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
Member of model.titlepagePart
Contained by textstructure: titlePage
May contain analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

 element imprimatur { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

Example

<imprimatur> Licensed and entered according to Order. </imprimatur>

@index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose. [3.8.2.]
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Attributes

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
att.spanning (@spanTo)

@indexName a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name), supplying a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.

Status Optional

Datatype data.name

Note This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text.

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis:

core:

abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi index item label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rep rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term title unclear figures:

cell figure table

header:

authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking:

seg

tagdocs:

eg

textstructure:

argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

core:

index term

Declaration

```xml
<interp>
(interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. [17.3] 

Module analysis
```
<interpGrp>

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
( att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) )
( att.global.analytic (@ana) )
( att.global.facs (@facs) )
att.interpLike (@type, @inst)
( att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) )
( att.source (@source) )

Member of model.global.meta
Contained by

analysis: interpGrp

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit cor date del editor emph expand foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref ref resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

core: desc

Declaration

element interp
{ newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
  att.interpLike.attributes, newline
  ( text | model.gLike | model.desclike | model.certLike )
  newline
}

Example

<interp type="structuralunit"
xml:id="ana_am">aftermath</interp>

Note Generally, each <interp> element carries an xml:id attribute. This permits the encoder to explicitly associate the interpretation represented by the content of an <interp> with any textual element through its ana attribute. Alternatively (or, in addition) an <interp> may carry an inst attribute which points to one or more textual elements to which the analysis represented by the content of the <interp> applies.

<interpGrp> (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type. [17.3.]
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Contained by

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit cori date del editor emph
    expan foreign gloss head hi item l label lg list mentioned name note num orig p
    pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title
    unclear

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence
    principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg
textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group impramatur opener postscript
    salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp

core: desc

Declaration

```xml
<interpGrp>
  {\newline
    att.global.attributes,\newline
    att.interpLike.attributes,\newline
    ( model.descLike*, interp+ )\newline
  }
</interpGrp>
```

Example

```xml
<interpGrp resp="#TMA"
type="structuralunit">  
<desc>basic structural organization</desc>
<interp xml:id="I1">introduction</interp>
<interp xml:id="I2">conflict</interp>
<interp xml:id="I3">climax</interp>
<interp xml:id="I4">revenge</interp>
<interp xml:id="I5">reconciliation</interp>
<interp xml:id="I6">aftermath</interp>
</interpGrp>
<bibl xml:id="TMA">
  <!-- bibliographic citation for source of this interpretive framework -->
</bibl>
```

Note Any number of `<interp>` elements.

`<item>` contains one component of a list. [3.7, 2.5, ]

Module core

Attributes Attributes

`att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
    (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
    (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Contained by

core: list
May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expand foreign gap gloss

graphic in index lab lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

element item\nnewline
{\newline
 att.global.attributes,\newline
 att.sortable.attributes,\newline
 macro.specialPara}

Example

<list rend="numbered">
 <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
 <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
 <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</item>
 <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
 <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
 <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
 <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
 <item> ...</item>
</list>

Note  May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks. Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global n attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the n attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not n.

<keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. ]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

(att.global.facs (@facs))

@scheme identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Contained by: textClass
## A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

May contain

**core:** list term

**Declaration**

```plaintext
{newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?, newline
  ( term* | list )\newline
}
```

**Example**

```xml
<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
  <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
  <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
</keywords>
```

**Example**

```xml
<keywords>
  <term>Fermented beverages</term>
  <term>Central Andes</term>
  <term>Schinus molle</term>
  <term>Molle beer</term>
  <term>Indigenous peoples</term>
  <term>Ethnography</term>
  <term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>
```

**Note**  Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a `<term>` element directly within the `<keywords>` element. An alternative usage, in which each `<term>` appears within a `<item>` inside a `<list>` is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated. If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the `scheme` attribute.

---

(verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.12.1. 3.12. 7.2.5.]

**Module core**

**Attributes Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.fragmentable` (@part)

**Member of model.ILike**

**Contained by**

- `core`: head item lg note q sp stage
- `figures`: cell figure
- `header`: change licence
- `textstructure`: argument body div epigraph postscript trailer

**May contain**

- `analysis`: interp interpGrp pc s w
- `core`: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref regs rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
- `figures`: figure formula table

---

124
**Declarations**

```xml
<element label>
{newline
att.global.attributes,
newline
att.fragmentable.attributes,
newline
macro.paraContent}

Example

```xml
<l met="x/x/x/x/x/" real="/xx/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?</l>
```

**<label>** contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.7]

**Module core**

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>att.global</strong></td>
<td>@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>att.global.linking</strong></td>
<td>@corresp, @next, @prev</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>att.global.analytic</strong></td>
<td>@ana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>att.global.facs</strong></td>
<td>@facs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>att.typed</strong></td>
<td>@type, @subtype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>att.placement</strong></td>
<td>@place</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Member of** `model.labelLike`

**Contained by**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>add, corr, del, desc, emph, head, hi, item, lg, list, note, orig, p, q, ref, reg, sic, stage, title, unclear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figures**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cell, figDesc, figure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Header**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>change, licence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Linking**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anchor, seg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Textstructure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>argument, body, div, docEdition, epigraph, imprimatur, postscript, salute, signed, titlePart, trailer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**May contain**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Analysis Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>interp, interpGrp, pc, s, w</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Core**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abbr, address, choice, corr, date, del, emph, expand, foreign, gap, gloss, graphic, hi, index, lb, mentioned, milestone, name, note, num, orig, pb, ptr, ref, reg, rs, sic, soCalled, term, time, title, unclear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figures**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>figure, formula</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Header**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>idno</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Linking**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anchor, seg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tagdocs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att, code, gi, ident, val</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Declaration**

```xml
<element label>
{newline
att.global.attributes,
newline
att.typed.attributes,
newline
att.placement.attributes,
newline
macro.phraseSeq}
```

125
Example. Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global xml:lang attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```xml
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label nu>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label lhude>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label bloweth>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label med>med</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <label wude>wude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <label awe>awe</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <label lhouth lhouth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
  <label sterteth>sterteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
    <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
    <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term> as the fyr</quote>
  </cit>
</item>
  <label verteth>verteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
  <label murie<murie></label>
  <item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
  <label swik>swik</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
  <label naver>naver</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>
```

Example. Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon’s *Autobiography*. In this usage the `<label>` element is synonymous with the `n` attribute on the `<item>` element:

```
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
```

```
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
  <item>(1)</item>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</item>
  <item>(2)</item>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author and the printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>
```

Example. Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```
<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
</list>
```
I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.

June.

I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus amori.

August.

I went to Crassy, and staid two days.

Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

Example Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears within the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the type attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

(langUsage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. 2.4. 15.3.2.]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.profileDescPart

| Contained by
header: profileDesc |

May contain
header: language

Declaration

element langUsage
{

att.global.attributes,
att.declarable.attributes,
}
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example

```xml
<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québecois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example

```xml
<langUsage>
  <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
  <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic
```
Note Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

(line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.10.3, 7.2.5.]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global/analytic (@ana))
(att.global/facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef)
att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by
analysis:

core:
abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor emph
expan foreign gloss head hi item label lg listBibl mentioned name note num orig
p pubPlace publisher q ref resp rs sic soCalled sp speaker stage term time title
unclear

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder language licence
principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript
salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Declaration

element lb
{newline
  \{newline
    att.global.attributes, \{newline
    att.typed.attributes, \{newline
    att.edition.attributes, \{newline
    att.spanning.attributes, \{newline
    att.breaking.attributes, \{newline
    empty \{newline
  \}
}

Example This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

<l> Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the 
Fruit</l>
<l> Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our 
woe, </l>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The break attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

Example

<titlePart>
  <lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.
</titlePart>

Note By convention, <lb/> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The n attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb/> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l/> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The type attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes break, ed, or edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.12.1, 3.12, 7.2.5]}

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @m, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facS (@facs)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part))
att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

Member of macro.paraContent model.divPart

Contained by core: add corr del emph head hi item lg note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
figures: cell figure
header: change licence
linking: seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
 signed titlePart trailer

May contain analysis: interp interpGrp
core: desc gap head index label lb lg milestone note pb pf stage
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
 postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

```
<example>
  <titlePart>
    <lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.
  </titlePart>

  Note By convention, <lb/> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new
  line starts. The n attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated
  with the text between this point and the next <lb/> element, typically the sequence
  number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is
  intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page,
  at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as
  lines of verse (for which the <l/> element is available) except in circumstances
  where structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The type attribute may be used to
  characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes break, ed,
  or edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line
  break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

  <lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a
  stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.12.1, 3.12, 7.2.5]}

  Module core
  Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @m, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facS (@facs)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.fragmentable (@part))
  att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls)

  Member of macro.paraContent model.divPart

  Contained by core: add corr del emph head hi item lg note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
  figures: cell figure
  header: change licence
  linking: seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
  signed titlePart trailer

  May contain analysis: interp interpGrp
core: desc gap head index label lb lg milestone note pb pf stage
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
  postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration
```

130
Schematron

<sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg or gap element.</sch:assert>

Example

<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>is equivocal.</l>
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
  <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

<licence>
contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to
the text. [2.2.4.]

Module header
Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)
att.datable (@calendar, @period)
(att.datable.w3c (@when))

Member of model.availabilityPart

Contained by
header: availability

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc ps w

core: abbr addr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss

graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p

pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Declaration

```xml
element licence
{ newline
att.global.attributes,
att.pointing.attributes,
att.datable.attributes,
macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```xml
<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-
Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0
New Zealand Licence
</licence>
```

Example

```xml
<availability>
<licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/
notBefore="2013-01-01">
<p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
applies to this document.</p>
<p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>
</licence>
</availability>
```

Note A `<licence>` element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the
text in question. The `target` attribute may be used to reference a full version of the
licence. The `when`, `notBefore`, `notAfter`, `from` or `to` attributes may be used in
combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

`<list>` contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.7]

Module core
Attributes

- `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@xml:space`)
- `att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)
- `att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)
- `att.global.facs` (`@facs`)
- `att.sortable` (`@sortKey`)
- `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

`@type` describes the nature of the items in the list.

Derived from `att.typed`

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: `gloss` each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item.

`index` each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.

`instructions` each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.

`litany` each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.

`syllogism` each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.
Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of type on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the rend or style attributes for these aspects of a list, while using type for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.

The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

Example

<list rend="numbered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
</list>
A List of Elements Described

Example

Example

Example

The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):
no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.

And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day, he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him down as a thief.

And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.

Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and 120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had refused him justice.

And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first occasion if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.

And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.

Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy Cross.

I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy Cross.

I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

subscribed with
the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>

I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>

I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>

I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.

I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</item>

I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>

I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>

</list>

Note May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. 3.11.1
2.2.7 15.3.2 ]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.declarable (@default) att.typed
(@type, @subtype)
Member of model.biblLike
Contained by core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl note orig p q ref reg relatedItem
sic stage title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence sourceDesc taxonomy
linking: seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
signed titlePart trailer
May contain core: bibl head lb listBibl milestone pb
linking: anchor
Declaration
element listBibl\newline
{\newline
att.global.attributes,\newline
att.sortable.attributes,\newline
att.declarable.attributes,\newline
att.typed.attributes,\newline
(\newline
model.headLike*,\newline
( model.biblLike | model.milestoneLike )+,newline

136
Example

```
<listBibl>
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
        Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
  </bibl>
  <biblStruct>
    <analytic>
      <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
    </analytic>
    <monogr>
      <title>The Penny Histories</title>
      <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
      <imprint>
        <publisher>OUP</publisher>
        <date>1968</date>
      </imprint>
    </monogr>
  </biblStruct>
</listBibl>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example

There is thus a striking accentual difference between a verbal form like
<mentioned xml:id="X234" xml:lang="el">eluthemen</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X234">we were released,</gloss> accented on the second syllable of the
word, and its participial derivative
<mentioned xml:id="X235" xml:lang="el">lutheis</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X235">released,</gloss> accented on the last.

<milestone/> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text,
typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard
reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural
element. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
att.milestoneUnit (@unit)
att.typed (@type, @subtype)
att.edition (@ed, @edRef)
att.spanning (@spanTo)
att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
<milestone/>
```


138
Example

```xml
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/>
```

Note For this element, the global $n$ attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value unnumbered should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc. The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

{att.global.attributes, newline
att.personal.attributes, newline
att.datable.attributes, newline
att.editLike.attributes, newline
att.typed.attributes, newline
macro.phraseSeq}

Example

<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name>

Note Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

<note> contains a note or annotation. 3.8.1. 2.2.6. 3.11.2.8. 9.3.5.4. ]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.placement (@place) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target,
@evaluate) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)) att.typed (@type,
@subtype)

@anchored indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

Status Optional

Datatype data.truthValue

Default true

Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. page 218, lines 3–4). The anchored attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the n attribute.

@targetEnd points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Note This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.4.6.

Member of model.noteLike
And yet it is not only
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the
painterly \textit{Malerisch}. This word has, in the German, two
distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
picturesque and painterly respectively.

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for
example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header:
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example The global n attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century, <note n="126" anchored="true"> The alleged mention of Judah Nagid’s mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann.

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. 2.2.]

Module header
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))

Contained by header: fileDesc
May contain core: note relatedItem

Declaration

`element notesStmt { att.global.attributes, ( model.noteLike | relatedItem )+ }`

Example

<notesStmt>
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>

Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.5.3.]

Module core
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)
@type indicates the type of numeric value.
**Status** Optional

**Datatype** [data.enumerated]

*Suggested values include:* **cardinal** absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5

- **ordinal** ordinal number, e.g. 21st
- **fraction** fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters
- **percentage** a percentage

*Note* If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

@value supplies the value of the number in standard form.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** [data.numeric]

*Values* a numeric value.

*Note* The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype data.numeric.

**Member of** model.measureLike

**Contained by**

- analysis: s

**core:** abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan

- foreign gloss head hi item | label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace

- publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

**figures:** cell figDesc

**header:** authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder

- language licence principal sponsor

**linking:** seg

**tagdocs:** eg

**textstructure:** byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

- imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

**May contain**

- analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

**core:** abbr add address choice corr date del desc editor emph expan

- foreign gap gloss graphic hi

- index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term

- time title unclear

**figures:** figure formula

**header:** idno

**linking:** anchor seg

**tagdocs:** att code gi ident val

**Declaration**

```xml
<element num>

- newline
  - att.global.attributes,

- newline
  - att.ranging.attributes,

- newline
  - attribute type

- newline
  - "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" | xsd:Name

- newline
  - attribute value { data.numeric }?,

- newline
  - macro.phraseSeq
```

**Example**
I reached twenty-one on my twenty-first birthday. Light travels at \(3 \times 10^{10}\) cm per second.

Note Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 18. The \(<\text{num}>\) element is intended for use in simple applications.

\(<\text{opener}>\) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2]

Module \text{texstructure}

\text{Attributes att.global } (@\text{xml:id}, @n, @\text{xml:lang}, @rend, @\text{xml:space})
\begin{itemize}
  \item att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
  \item att.global.analytic (@ana)
  \item att.global.facs (@facs)
\end{itemize}

Member of \text{model.divTopPart}

Contained by \text{core: lg list}

\text{texstructure: body div group postscript}

May contain \text{analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w}
\text{core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear}

\text{figures: figure formula}

\text{header: idno}

\text{linking: anchor seg}

\text{tagdocs: att code gi iden val}

\text{texstructure: argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed}

Declaration

```xml
<element opener>
<newline
  \text{att.global.attributes, newline}
<newline
  \text{model.gLike}
\text{model.phrase}
<newline
  \text{argument}
<newline
  \text{byline}
<newline
  \text{dateline}
<newline
  \text{epigraph}
</element>
```

Example

```xml
<opener>
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

Example

```xml
<opener>
<dateline>
  <name type=place>Great Marlborough Street</name>
<date>November 11, 1848</date>
</dateline>
```
<salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
<opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from earlier enquiring..."</p>

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.4.2. 12.]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facets (@facets)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by
analysis: pc s w
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace published q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
figures: cell
header: change distributor edition extent licence
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

element orig
{newline
 att.global.attributes, newline
 att.responsibility.attributes, newline
 macro.paraContent}

Example. If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:
<l>But this will be a <orig>meer</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig></l>

Example. More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

But this will be a choice
<choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</choice>

And hardly shall we all be choice
<choice>
  <orig>understood</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
</choice>

(paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1 7.2.5 ]

Module core
Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
att.declaring (@decls)
att.fragmentable (@part)

Member of model.pLike

Contained by
core: item note q sp stage
figures: cell figure
header: availability change editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc licence projectDesc
publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc

textstructure: argument back body div epigraph front postscript

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp p s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit cor date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb
ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```xml
<element p>

{newline

att.global.attributes,\newline
att.declaring.attributes,\newline
att.fragmentable.attributes,\newline
macro.paraContent}
```

Example

<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.<q>What have you done?</q></p>

<p><q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf.</p>

</p>
Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead," she said.

"Yes," said Thjostolf. "And now you must think up some plan for me."

(page break) marks the start of a new page in a paginated document. 

Example Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

Example A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the \texttt{facs} attribute
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Note A `<pb>` element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The `global n` attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the `<pb>` element itself. The `type` attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

`<pc>` (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes: Attributes `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
`att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev) `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
`att.global.facs` (@facs) `att.segLike` (@function) `att.datcat` (@datcat, @valueDatcat)
`att.fragmentable` (@part) `att.typed` (@type, @subtype)

@force indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases.

Status: Optional

Datatype: `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: strong the punctuation mark is a word separator
weak the punctuation mark is not a word separator
inter the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

@unit provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.

Status: Optional

Datatype: `data.enumerated`

@pre indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.

Status: Optional

Datatype: `data.truthValue`

Member of: `model.segLike`

Contained by:

- analysis:


core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cor date del editor emph expan foreign
gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher ref
greg rs sic so Called speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell
<postscript>

header: change distributor edition extent licence
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
                      imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
May contain
core: abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear
Declaration

element pc\newline
  {\newline
    att.global.attributes,\newline
    att.segLike.attributes,\newline
    att.typed.attributes,\newline
    attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,\newline
    attribute unit { data.enumerated }?,\newline
    attribute pre { data.truthValue }?,\newline
    ( text | model.gLike | c | model.pPart.edit )*\newline
  }

Example

<phr>
  <w>do</w>
  <w>you</w>
  <w>understand</w>
  <pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>

</postscript>

Contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs))

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by
core: lg list
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front group postscript
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: bibliog desc gap head index label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q sp stage
figures: figure table
linking: anchor
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: closer opener postscript signed trailer
Declaration

element postscript\newline
  {\newline
    att.global.attributes,\newline
  }

149
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

(
  (model.global | model.divTopPart)*,
  newline
  (model.common),
  newline
  (model.global | model.common)*,
  newline
  ((model.divBottomPart), model.global*)*
)newline

Example

<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
      <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
    <signed>Seymour</signed>
  </closer>
  <postscript>
    <label>P.S.</label>
    <p>The collision occurred on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>
  </postscript>
</div>

<principal> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [2.2.1]
<profileDesc>

Example

```xml
<principal ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912">Gary Taylor</principal>
```

</profileDesc>

(profileDesc) (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.  

Module header

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)

Member of `model.teiHeaderPart`

Contained by

- `header: teiHeader`

May contain

- `header: creation`
- `langUsage`
- `textClass`

Declaration

```xml
element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, ( model.profileDescPart* ) }
```

Example

```xml
<profileDesc>

<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr">French</language>
</langUsage>

<textDesc n="novel">
  <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
  <constitution type="single"/>
  <derivation type="original"/>
  <domain type="art"/>
  <factuality type="fiction"/>
  <interaction type="none"/>
  <preparedness type="prepared"/>
  <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
  <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
</textDesc>

<settingDesc>
  <setting>
    <name>Paris, France</name>
    <time>Late 19th century</time>
  </setting>
</settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Note Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc>. In earlier versions of these Guidelines, it was required that the <creation> element appear first.

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. 2.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header
Attributes Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart
Contained by
header: encodingDesc
May contain
core: p

Declaration

```
<projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990</p>
</projectDesc>
```

Example

<ptr/> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [3.6. 16.1.]

Module core
Attributes Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed
(@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.ptrLike
Contained by
analysis:
  core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item it label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg relatedItem resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
  figures: cell figDesc
  header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
  language licence principal sponsor
<pubPlace>

linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
(element ptr\newline
{\newline
  att.global.attributes,\newline
  att.pointing.attributes,\newline
  att.typed.attributes,\newline
  att.declaring.attributes,\newline
  att.cReferencing.attributes,\newline
  empty\newline
  >>\newline
tei:constraintSpec\newline
  []\newline
    scheme = "isoschematron"\newline
    ident = "ptrAtts"\newline
    "Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on "\newline
    "."\newline
  ]\newline
  }\newline
}
```

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <s:name/>.</s:report>

Example

```
<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/>
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>
<ptr cRef="1.3.4"/>
```

</pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.4] ]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

core: bibi
header: publicationStmt
textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```xml
<publicationStmt>
<publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
<pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
<date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Example

```xml
<publicationStmt>
<publisher>C. Muquardt</publisher>
<pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
<date>when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

Example

```xml
<publicationStmt>
<publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
```
Where a publication statement contains several members of the `model.publicationStmtPart` classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

**Note** Where a publication statement contains several members of the `model.publicationStmtPart` classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

**Example**

```xml
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</imprint>
```

**Note** Where a publication statement contains several members of the `model.publicationStmtPart` classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.
<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.  

Module core

Attributes att.global (att.global.attributes)
(attr.global.linking (attr.global.analytic))
(att.global.facets) att.ascribed (att.ascribed.attributes)
att.source (att.source.attributes)

@type may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Optional

Datatype [data.enumerated]

Suggested values include: spoken representation of speech

thought representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue
written quotation from a written source
soCalled authorial distance
foreign
distinct linguistically distinct
term technical term
emph rhetorically emphasized
mentioned refering to itself, not its normal referent

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change licence

linking: seg

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index i label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

element q

{att.global.attributes, att.ascribed.attributes, att.source.attributes}
Example

It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> — to enter the letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press <q>0 0 f c</q>

Note May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q>may be thought of as syntactic sugar for</q> with a value of rend that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. 16.1.]</ref>

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)

att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)

att.global.analytic (@ana)

att.global.facs (@facs)

att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

att.typed (@type, @subtype)

att.declaring (@decls)

att.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

analysis: $ s$

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item i label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q qref reg ref relatedItem resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target’ and @cRef’ may be supplied on <s:name/></s:report>

Example

See especially <ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref>

Example

See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term> </ref>.

Note The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. 2.3. 2.3.6.]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by
header: encodingDesc

May contain
core: p

Declaration

element refsDecl
{

}
Example

```xml
<refsDecl>
  <cRefPattern matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9-]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)" replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/>
</refsDecl>
```

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

Example

```xml
<refsDecl>
  <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the <att>n</att> attribute on the highest level <gi>div</gi> element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential number of the next level <gi>div</gi> followed by a colon followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest) level <gi>div</gi>.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

(regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [3.4.2. 12.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) ) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)) )

att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element reg
{ newline
   att.global.attributes, newline
   att.editLike.attributes, newline
   att.typed.attributes, newline
   macro.paraContent}
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, `<reg>` may be used alone:

```
&lt;q&gt;Please &lt;reg&gt;knock&lt;/reg&gt; if an &lt;reg&gt;answer&lt;/reg&gt; is &lt;reg&gt;required&lt;/reg&gt; &lt;/q&gt;
```

Example It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the `<choice>` and `<orig>` elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
&lt;q&gt;Please &lt;choice&gt;
   &lt;reg resp="#LB">knock&lt;/reg&gt;
   &lt;orig&gt;cnk&lt;/orig&gt;
&lt;/choice&gt; if an &lt;choice&gt;
   &lt;reg&gt;answer&lt;/reg&gt;
   &lt;orig&gt;nsr&lt;/orig&gt;
&lt;/choice&gt; is &lt;choice&gt;
   &lt;reg&gt;required&lt;/reg&gt;
   &lt;orig&gt;reqd&lt;/orig&gt;
&lt;/choice&gt;
&lt;/q&gt;
```

`<relatedItem>` contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.11.2.7, ]

Module core

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@target points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datatype</td>
<td>data.pointer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by
core: bibl
header: notesStmt

May contain
core: bibl listBibl ptr ref

Declaration
element relatedItem
{newline
  att.global.attributes,\newline
  att.typed.attributes,\newline
  attribute target { data.pointer }?,\newline
  ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )?\newline
  >>\newline
  tei:constraintSpec\newline
[\newline
  ident = "targetorcontent1"\newline
  scheme = "isoschematron"\newline
  " If the @target attribute on "\newline
  " is used, the relatedItem element must be empty"\newline
  " "\newline
  """A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element"\newline
}\newline
}

Schematron <sch:report test="@target and count( child::* ) > 0">If the @target
attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be
empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::*">A relatedItem element
should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related
bibliographic item</sch:assert>

Example

<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Shirley, James</author>
    <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
      <date>1953</date>
    </imprint>
    <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
  </monogr>
  <series>
    <title>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642–1700</title>
  </series>
  <relatedItem type="otherForm">
    <biblStruct>
      <monogr>
        <author>Shirley, James</author>
        <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
        <title type="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in
Salisbury Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
        <imprint>
          <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
          <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
          <date>1655</date>
        </imprint>
        <extent>78 p.</extent>
      </monogr>
    </biblStruct>
  </relatedItem>
</biblStruct>

Note If the target attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element
should be empty.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person’s intellectual responsibility, or an organization’s role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.2. 2.2.5.]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
   (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
   (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period)
   att.datable.w3c (@when)

Contained by
core: respStmt

May contain
analysis: abbr interp interpGrp
core: abbr address choice date emph expan foreign gap gloss hi index lb mentioned
   milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
<respStmt>
  <resp key="com">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>
```

Note The attributes key or ref, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form, by referring directly (using ref) or indirectly (using key) to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html for bibliographic usage.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.2. 2.2.5.]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
<revisionDesc>

( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) )
( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) )
( att.global.facs ( @facs ) )
att.canonical ( @key, @ref )

Member of model.respLike

Contained by
core: bibl

header: editionStmt, seriesStmt, titleStmt

May contain
core: name, resp

Declaration

```
element respStmt
{ newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
  att.canonical.attributes, newline
  ( ( resp+, model.nameLike.agent+ ) | ( model.nameLike.agent+, resp+ ) )
} newline
```

Example

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>
```

Example

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.5.

Module header

Attributes Attributes

att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space )

( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) )

( att.global.facs ( @facs ) )

att.docStatus ( @status )

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

core: list

header: change

Declaration

```
element revisionDesc
{ newline
  att.global.attributes, newline
  att.docStatus.attributes, newline
  ( list | listChange | change+ )
} newline
```

Example
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>

Note If present on this element, the status attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally change elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

<row> contains one row of a table. [14.1.1]

Module figures
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)

Contained by
defines: table
May contain
figures: cell

Declaration
element row { att.global.attributes, att.tableDecoration.attributes, cell+ }

Example

<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))
  att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))

Member of model.nameLike

Contained by
analysis: s
core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder language licence principal sponsor
linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

164
Example

<My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs type="person">his lady</rs> to him one day,<n>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at last?</n>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num prig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

element s\newline
{\newline
   att.global.attributes,\newline
   att.segLike.attributes,\newline
   att.typed.attributes,\newline
   text\newline
   | model.gLike | model.global | binaryObject | formula | graphic | media |
   }\newline
   tei:constraintSpec\newline
   [\newline
      ident = "noNestedS"\newline
      scheme = "isoschematron"\newline
      "You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead"\newline
   ]\newline
}

Schematron <s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead</s:report>

Example

<s:A short affair/></s>
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>

Note The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be used instead. The type attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
   (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
   (att.global.facds (@facs))

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by
core: lg list
figures: figure table

166
<samplingDecl>

(sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. [2.3.2. 2.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))

(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

Declaration

<element samplingDecl>newline

{newline

att.global.attributes,newline

att.declarable.attributes,newline

model.pLike+newline
}

Example

<p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle, or end of each text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>

</samplingDecl>

Note  This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.
<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level. [16.3 6.2 7.2.5 ]

Module linking

Attributes

att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.segLike ( @function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed ( @type, @subtype) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))

Member of model.choicePart model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expand

gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expand foreign gap gloss

graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb

ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

```
element seg\newline
\{\newline
att.global.attributes,\newline
att.segLike.attributes,\newline
att.typed.attributes,\newline
att.responsibility.attributes,\newline
macro.paraContent\}
```

Example

```
<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

Example

```
<s>
  <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the ballfield.
</s>
```
Example

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. 2.2.1]

Module header
Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))

Contained by
header: fileDesc
May contain
core: biblScope editor respStmt title
header: idno

Declaration

<seriesStmt>
{newline
att.global.attributes,
newline
( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( editor | respStmt )* , ( idno | biblScope )*) )
newline}
</seriesStmt>

Example

<seriesStmt>
<title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
<respStmt>
<resp>ed. by</resp>
<name>Jan Gonda</name>
</respStmt>
<biblScope unit="volume">1.2</biblScope>
</idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>

<sic> (Latin for thus or so ) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.4.1. ]

Module core
Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Member of \texttt{model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional}

\textbf{Contained by:} \texttt{pc s w}

\textbf{analysis:} \texttt{pc s w}

\textbf{core:} \texttt{abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear}

\textbf{figures:} \texttt{cell}

\textbf{header:} \texttt{change distributor edition extent licence}

\textbf{linking:} \texttt{seg}

\textbf{tagdocs:} \texttt{eg}

\textbf{textstructure:} \texttt{byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer}

\textbf{May contain:}

\textbf{analysis:} \texttt{interp interpGrp pc s w}

\textbf{core:} \texttt{abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear}

\textbf{figures:} \texttt{figure formula table}

\textbf{header:} \texttt{idno}

\textbf{linking:} \texttt{anchor seg}

\textbf{tagdocs:} \texttt{att code eg gi ident val}

\textbf{Declaration}

\begin{verbatim}
\element sic
\newline
{"newline
\att.global.attributes,\newline
\att.responsibility.attributes,\newline
macro пара\Content}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Example 1}

for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and \texttt{\textless sic\textgreater} a Table\texttt{\textless sic\textgreater} of green fields.

\textbf{Example 2} If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, \texttt{\textless sic\textgreater} may be used alone:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now—how \texttt{\textless sic\textgreater we can\textless sic\textgreater} prove or disprove anyone's theories?

\textbf{Example 3} It is also possible, using the \texttt{\textless choice\textgreater} and \texttt{\textless corr\textgreater} elements, to provide a corrected reading:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now—how \texttt{\textless choice\textgreater}

\texttt{\textless sic\textgreater} we can\texttt{\textless sic\textgreater}

\texttt{\textless corr\textgreater} can we\texttt{\textless corr\textgreater}

\texttt{\textless /choice\textgreater} prove or disprove anyone's theories?

\textbf{Example 4}

for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and \texttt{\textless choice\textgreater} a Table\texttt{\textless /choice\textgreater}
<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes

att.global (xml:id, @n, xml:lang, @rend, xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))

(att.global.analytic (@ana))

(att.global.facs (@facs))

Member of model.divBottomPart model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table
textstructure: back body closer div front group opener postscript

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expand foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index label lb lg listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb

ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

\[
\text{element signed \{ att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent \}}
\]

Example

<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>

Example

<signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,

<list>
    <item>John Bull, </item>
    <item>Nic. Frog. </item>
</list>
</signed>

<soCalled> contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics. [3.3.3]

Module core
**Attributes** Attributes

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
```

**Member of** model.emphLike

**Contained by** analysis:

```
Member of model.emphLike

analysis: s
```

**Core attributes**

```
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan
foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
```

**Figures attributes**

```
figures: cell figDesc
```

**Header attributes**

```
header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor
```

**Linking attributes**

```
linking: seg
```

**Tagdocs attributes**

```
tagdocs: eg
```

**Textstructure attributes**

```
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprintur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
```

**May contain**

```
May contain interp interpGrp pc s w
```

**Core attributes to header**

```
core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg resp rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
```

**Figures attributes to header**

```
figures: figure formula
```

**Linking attributes to header**

```
linking: anchor seg
```

**Tagdocs attributes to header**

```
tagdocs: att code gi ident val
```

**Declaration**

```
element soCalled { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

**Example**

```
To edge his way along the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance, was what the knowing ones call <soCalled>nuts</soCalled> to Scrooge.
```

**<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7.]

**Module header**

```
 Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default)
```

**Contained by**

```
Member of model.emphLike

header: fileDesc
```

**May contain**

```
core: bibl list listBibl p
```

---

172
figures: table

Declaration

```xml
<sourceDesc>
<bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>.
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
  <publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>.
</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

Example

```xml
<p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>
```

(sp) (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. 3.12.2. 3.12. 7.2.2.

Module core

Attributes

- att.global: `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@rend`, `@xml:space`
- att.global.linking: `@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`
- att.global.analytic: `@ana`
- att.global.facs: `@facs`
- att.ascribed: `@who`

Member of model.divPart

Contained by

- item
- note
- q
- stage
- figures: cell
- figure
- header: change
- licence
- textstructure: argument body div epigraph postscript

May contain

- analysis: interp interpGrp
- core: cit gap index lg list milestone note p pb q speaker stage
- figures: figure
- table
- linking: anchor

Declaration

```xml
<sp>

att.global.attributes,
att.ascribed.attributes,

(173
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example

<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>

<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>

<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place...</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll — I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I will forbear...</p>
</sp>

Note The who attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

Note Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements. The who attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2, ]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))

Contained by

core:  sp

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core:  abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term
time title unclear

figures:  figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs:  att code gi ident val

Declaration

174
Example

```xml
<sp who="#ni #rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>

<sponsor/>
```

Example

```
<sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>
<sponsor ref="http://www.allc.org/">Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</sponsor>
```

Note Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from funders, who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2, 3.12, 7.2.4]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.placement (@place)

@type indicates the kind of stage direction.
Status Recommended
Datatype [data.enumerated]
Suggested values include: setting describes a setting.
   entrance describes an entrance.
   exit describes an exit.
   business describes stage business.
   novelistic is a narrative, motivating stage direction.
   delivery describes how a character speaks.
   modifier gives some detail about a character.
   location describes a location.
   mixed more than one of the above

Member of model.stageLike
Contained by
core: add corr del desc emph head hi item lg note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence
linking: seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibli choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index I label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val
Declaration

element stage
newline
{newline
   att.ascribed.attributes, newline
   att.global.attributes, newline
   att.placement.attributes, newline
   attribute type newline
}{newline
   "setting": newline
   | "entrance": newline
   | "exit": newline
   | "business": newline
   | "novelistic": newline

176
Example

```xml
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse.</stage>
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the family.</stage>
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

Example

```xml
<l>Behold. <stage n="**" place="margin">Here the vp</lb/>per part of the <hi>Scene</hi> open'd; when straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <hi>Pure Artes</hi> sitting on two semi<lb/>circular ben<lb/>ches, one a<lb/>boe another: who sate thus till the rest of the <hi>Prologue</hi> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in order within the <hi>Scene</hi>, whiles the Musicke plaid</stage> Our Poet knowing our free hearts</l>
```

**Note** The who attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction.

**Table** contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Module figures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Attributes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>att.global.facs (@facs)</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>@rows</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Status</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Datatype</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>@cols</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Status</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Datatype</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Member of **model.listLike**  

Contained by
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

core: add cor del desc emph head hi item l note orig p q ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence sourceDesc
linking: seg

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

core: gap graphic head index lb milestone note pb
figures: figure formula row

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript salute signed trailer

Declaration

element table
newline
{newline
  att.global.attributes,\newline
  attribute rows { data.count }?,\newline
  attribute cols { data.count }?,\newline
  (newline
    ( model.headLike | model.global )*,\newline
    ( row, model.global* )+ | ( ( model.graphicLike ), model.global* )+ ),\newline
    ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*\newline
  )\newline
}

Example

<table rows="4" cols="4">
  <head>Poor Men’s Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
  <row role="label">
    <cell role="data"/>
    <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
    <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
    <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund’s</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">8</cell>
    <cell role="data">128</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">6</cell>
    <cell role="data">36</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Attleboro’</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">20</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Wymondham</cell>
    <cell role="data">1</cell>
  </row>
</table>
Note: Contains an optional heading and a series of rows. Any rendition information should be supplied using the global `rend` attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

```xml
<taxonomy>
  
  <table>
    <row>
      <cell role="data">11</cell>
      <cell role="data">22</cell>
    </row>
  </table>

<taxonomy> defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7.]

**Module header**

**Attributes**

\[
\text{att.global} (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space) \\
\text{att.global.linking} (@corresp, @next, @prev) \\
\text{att.global.analytic} (@ana) \\
\text{att.global.facs} (@facs)
\]

**Contained by**

header: `classDecl`

**May contain**

core: `bibl` `desc` `gloss` `listBibl`

**Declaration**

```xml

element taxonomy\newline
{\newline
  \text{att.global.attributes},\newline
  (\newline
    (\text{model.glossLike} | \text{model.descLike})*\newline
    \text{category}+\newline
    (\text{model.biblLike}, \text{category}*)\newline
  )\newline
}\newline
```

**Example**

```xml
<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
    <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
    <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
    <catDesc>National</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
    <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
    <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example

```xml
<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="literature">
    <catDesc>Literature</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="poetry">
    <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="sonnet">
    <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="shakesSonnet">
    <catDesc>Shakespearean Sonnet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="petraSonnet">
    <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="haiku">
    <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="drama">
    <catDesc>Drama</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="meter">
    <catDesc>Metrical Categories</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="feet">
    <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="iambic">
    <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="trochaic">
    <catDesc>Trochaic</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="feetNumber">
    <catDesc>Number of feet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="pentameter">
    <catDesc>Pentameter</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tetrameter">
    <catDesc>Tetrameter</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```

<lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter>

180
<teiCorpus> contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. 15.1. ]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana)
att.global.facs (@facs)

@version The version of the TEI scheme

Status Optional

Datatype data.version

Default 5.0

Container by teiCorpus

May contain
core: teiCorpus
header: teiHeader
textstructure: TEI

Declaration

```
<teiCorpus
 element teiCorpus
newline
 {newline
  att.global.attributes,newline
  attribute version { data.version }?,newline
  (newline
   teiHeader,newline
  ( ( model.resourceLike+, ( TEI | teiCorpus )* ) | ( TEI | teiCorpus )+ )
newline
 )
newline
```

Example

```xml
<teiCorpus version="5.2" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<teiHeader>
  <!-- header for corpus -->
</teiHeader>
<TEI>
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- header for first text -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <!-- content of first text -->
  </text>
</TEI>
<teiCorpus>
<teiHeader>
  <!-- header for second text -->
</teiHeader>
<text>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page for every TEI-conformant document. [2.1.1 15.1]

Module header
Attributes
ATT.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
ATT.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) (ATT.global.analytic (@ana))
ATT.global.facs (@facs)
@type specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached, for example whether it is a corpus or individual text.
Status Optional
Datatype data.enumerated
Sample values include: text the header is attached to a single text.[Default]
corpus the header is attached to a corpus.

Containability teiCorpus
textstructure: TEI
May contain header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc
Declaration

```
element teiHeader
|newline
| {newline
|      att.global.attributes,|newline
|      attribute type { data.enumerated }?,|newline
|      ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )|newline
|
```

Example

```
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
    <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
      <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
    </respStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
      <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
    </respStmt>
  </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```
<publicationStmt>
  <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
  <address>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</address>
  <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
  <availability>
    <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1968">1968</date>
</publicationStmt>

<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>

<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
  </projectDesc>
  <editorialDecl>
    <correction>
      <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
    </correction>
    <normalization>
      <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligature forms are not encoded.</p>
    </normalization>
  </editorialDecl>
  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
    <RefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]\.)\.(.*)" replacementPattern="xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2[@n='$2']/lb[@n='$3'])">A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that listed here: <list>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi></item>
      <item>a period</item>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi></item>
      <item>a space</item>
      <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi></item>
    </list>
    </RefPattern>
  </refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>

<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC
    </item>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file
    </item>
  </list>
</revisionDesc>
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.3.4.]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declaring ( @decls) att.pointing ( @targetLang, @target,
@evaluate) att.typed ( @type, @subtype) att.canonical ( @key, @ref) att.sortable
(@sortKey) att.cReferencing ( @cRef)

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by
analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan
foreign gloss head hi index item label mentioned name note num orig pubPlace
publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
keywords language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi
index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term
time title unclear

figures: figure formula

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
<term> element term

att.global.attributes,
att.declaring.attributes,
att.pointing.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
att.canonical.attributes,
att.sortable.attributes,
att.cReferencing.attributes,
macro.phraseSeq
```

Example
A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

Example

We may define <term xml:id="TDPV" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as 
<gloss target="#TDPV">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addressee, and the fiction</gloss>.

Note This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent <index> element. In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion. As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the ref attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the key attribute). Because the mutually exclusive target and cRef attributes overlap with the function of the ref attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

Module textstructure

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Contained by textstructure: TEI group
May contain analysis: interp interpGrp
core: gap index lb milestone note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: back body front group

Declaration
element text
\newline
{\newline
att.global.attributes,\newline
att.declaring.attributes,\newline
att.typed.attributes,\newline
(\newline
model.global*,\newline
}
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example

```xml
<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf?</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
  </body>
</text>
```

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```xml
<text>
  <front>
    <!-- front matter for the whole group -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
      <!-- first text -->
    </text>
    <text>
      <!-- second text -->
    </text>
  </group>
</text>
```

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the `<floatingText>` is provided for this purpose.

`<textClass>` (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3.]
att.global.attributefnewline
att.declarable.attributefnewline
( classCode | catRef | keywords )*newlne

Example
<taxonomy>
<category xml:id="acprose">
  <catDesc>Acaademic prose</catDesc>
</category>
<!-- other categories here -->
</taxonomy>
<!-- ... -->
</taxonomy>

<textClass>
  <catRef target="#acprose"/>
  <classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
  <keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
    <list>
      <item>End of the world</item>
      <item>History - philosophy</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>

<time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.5.4 ]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.datatable (@calendar, @period) (att.datatable.w3c (@when))
  att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
  @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))
  (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source))) att.typed (@type,
  @subtype)

Member of model.dateLike

Contained by
analysis: $ 

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expand
  foreign gloss head hi item 1 label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace
  publisher p ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
  language licence principal sponsor

linking: seg

tagDocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
  imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address choice corr date del emp expand foreign gap gloss graphic hi
  index lb mentioned milestone name note num orig p p pubPlace publisher p ref reg resp rs sic soCalled stage
term time title unclear
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

figures: figure formula
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: att code gi ident val

Declaration

```
<element time>
   {newline
      att.global.attributes,
      att.datable.attributes,
      att.editLike.attributes,
      att.typed.attributes,
      ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*\newline
   }
</element>
```

Example

As he sat smiling, the quarter struck — <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.5, ]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
( att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) )
( att.global.facs (@facs) )
att.canonical (@key, @ref)
att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

 Derived from att.typed

 Status Optional

Datatype [data.enumerated]

Sample values include:

 main main title
 sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part
 alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which
   the work is also known
 short abbreviated form of title
 desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning
   as a title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and
processing them according to their type; where such specialized
processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and
the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be
enclosed within a single <title> element.

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an
article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

 Status Optional

Datatype [data.enumerated]

Legal values are: a (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such
   as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger
   item.
m (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book
or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including
single volumes of multi-volume works

j (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication
such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper

s (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct
publications such as a collection

u (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material
(including theses and dissertations unless published by a
commercial press)

Note The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for
example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element
is ipso facto of level a, and one appearing within a <series>
element of level s. For this reason, the level attribute is not required
in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where
it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the
value implied by its parent element.

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan
foreign gloss head hi item l label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace
publisher q ref reg resp rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal seriesStmt sponsor titleStmt

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb
ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

element title\newline
{newline
  att.global.attributes,\newline
  att.canonical.attributes,\newline
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,\newline
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,\newline
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,\newline
  macro.paraContent}
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Example

<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
18–21 July 1989</title>

Example

<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable
edition</title>

Example

<title type="full">Synthèse</title>
<title type="main">an international journal for
epistemology, methodology and history of
science</title>

Note The attributes key and ref, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to
indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the
identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an
XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or
back matter. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
@type classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title
pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the main title page of a
work.

Member of model.frontPart

Contained by
textstructure: back front

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
core: gap graphic index lb milestone note pb
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle
epigraph imprimatur titlePart

Declaration
element titlePage
newline
{\newline
  att.global.attributes,\newline

190
<titlePart>

attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
newline
(model.global*,
newline
( model.titlepagePart ),
newline
( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*)
newline
}

Example

Example
<titlePage>
<docTitle>
<titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
<titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
<docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
<byline>By T.D.</byline>
<figure>
<head>TP</head>
<p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
<figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
</figure>
<docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for
<name>T.P.</name>
<date>1612.</date>
</docImprint>
</titlePage>

<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a
title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
( att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) ( att.global.analytic (@ana))
( att.global.facs (@facs))
@type specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.
  Status Optional
Datatype data.enumerated
  Suggested values include: main main title of the work[Default]
    sub (subordinate) subtitle of the work
    alt (alternate) alternative title of the work
    short abbreviated form of title
    desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
textstructure: back docTitle front titlePage

May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss
  graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig pb
  ptr ref regs rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear
figures: figure formula table

191
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

header:  idno
linking:  anchor seg
tagdocs:  att code eg gi ident val

Declaration

\begin{verbatim}
   element titlePart
   { newline
     att.global.attributes, newline
     attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" | xsd:Name }, newline
     macro.paraContent}
\end{verbatim}

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
     AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
     Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
     And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
     Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
     Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
     once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief</hi>,
     Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
     at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
     <hi>Penitent</hi>.
</titlePart>
</docTitle>
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
     AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
     Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
     And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
     Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
     Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
     once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief</hi>,
     Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
     at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
     <hi>Penitent</hi>.
</titlePart>
</docTitle>
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those
    responsible for its content. \[2.2.1] \[2.2.\]

Module header
Attributes  Attributes  att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
           att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana)
           att.global.facs (@facs)

Contained by
header:  fileDesc
May contain
core:  author editor respStmt title
header:  funder principal sponsor

Declaration

\begin{verbatim}
   element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }
\end{verbatim}

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
     transcription</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
\end{verbatim}

192
<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Example

<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>

Example

<trailer>
  <l>Instead of FINIS this advice <hi>I</hi> send.</l>
  <l>Let Rogues and Thieves beware of <lb/>Hamans</l>
  <hi>END.</hi>
</trailer>

From EEBO A87070

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. 3.4.3.]
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

@quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) (att.source (@source)) )

@reason indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.word separated by whitespace

Note One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause. Typical examples might thus include faded, illegible, eccentric_ductus background_noise, passing_truck, etc.

@hand Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

@agent Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: rubbing damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor emph expan foreign gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: seg

tagdocs: eg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl choice cit corr date del desc emph expan foreign gap gloss graphic hi index label lb lg list listBibl mentioned milestone name note num orig p ptr q ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure formula table

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: att code eg gi ident val

Declaration
Example

\[<u>\] ...and then \(<unclear \text{ reason="background-noise"}>\text{Nathalie}</unclear>\] said ... \(</u>\)

Note The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. The \(<\text{damage}>\), \(<\text{gap}>\), \(<\text{del}>\), \(<\text{unclear}>\) and \(<\text{supplied}>\) elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2, for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The \textit{hand} attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 11.3.2.1.

\(<\text{val}>\) (value) contains a single attribute value. [22] 22.4.5, ]

Module tagdocs
Attributes Attributes \att.global\ (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
\att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) \att.global.analytic (@ana)
\att.global.facs (@facs)
Member of model.phrase.xml
Contained by
analysis:
\textit{core:} abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del desc editor emph expan foreign
gloss head hi item label mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q ref reg reps rs sic soCalled speaker stage term time title unclear
figures: cell figDesc
header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder
language licence principal sponsor
linking: seg
tagdocs: eg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
May contain Character data only
Declaration \texttt{\textit{element val \{ \att.global.attributes, text \}}}
Example

\(<\text{val}>\)unknown</val>\)

\(<\text{w}>\) (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [17.1, ]
Module **analysis**

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @rend, @xml:space)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.segLike` (@function)
- `att.datcat` (@datcat, @valueDatcat)
- `att.fragmentable` (@part)
- `att.typed` (@type, @subtype)

- **@lemma** provides a lemma for the word, such as an uninflected dictionary entry form.

  **Status** Optional  
  **Datatype** `data.text`

- **@lemmaRef** provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.

  **Status** Optional  
  **Datatype** `data.pointer`

**Member of** `model.segLike`

**Contained by**

```
<text | model.gLike | seg | w | m | c | pc | model.global | model.lPart | ...
```

**May contain**

```
<interp | interpGrp | pc | w
```

**Declaration**

```xml
<w
  type="verb" lemma="hit"
  lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml">hitt<
```

```xml
</m>
</w>
```
A.2 Model classes

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.5.2.]

Module tei
Used by address
Members model.nameLike model.nameLike.agent name model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike model.placeNamePart idno rs addrLine

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [1]

Module tei
Used by model.pPart.data
Members address

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4.]

Module tei
Used by availability
Members licence

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.11.]

Module tei
Used by cit listBibl model.inter relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy
Members bibl listBibl

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.11.]

Module tei
Used by bibl
Members model.imprintPart biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher model.respLike author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor availability bibl edition extent relatedItem

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [3.4.]

Module tei
Used by choice
Members abbr corr expan orig reg seg sic unclear

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3.]

197
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Module tei
Used by argument body div epigraph figure postscript
Members model.divPart model.interLike model.pLike listLike model.labelLike listBibl model.egLike eg model.labelLike model.qLike model.quotelike cit q
model.stageLike stage

Note This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.5.4. 13.3.6.]
Module tei
Used by model.pPart.data
Members date time

model.descLike groups elements which contain a description of their function.
Module tei
Used by category gap graphic interp interpGrp taxonomy
Members desc

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2.]
Module tei
Used by body div figure front group lg list table
Members model.divBottomPart closer postscript signed trailer
model.divWrapper argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute

model.divBottomPart groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6.]
Module tei
Used by back model.divBottom postscript
Members closer postscript signed trailer

model.divGenLike groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source.
Module tei
Used by body div
Members divGen

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.
Module tei
**model.divPart** groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* macro.specialPara model.common

*Members* model.lLike | model.pLike | lg | sp

*Note* Note that this element class does not include members of the `model.inter` class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

---

**model.divTop** groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* body div group | lg | list

*Members* model.divTopPart | model.headLike | head | opener | signed

  | model.divWrapper | argument | byline | dateline | docAuthor | docDate | epigraph | salute

---

**model.divTopPart** groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.divTop | postscript

*Members* model.headLike | head | opener | signed

---

**model.divWrapper** groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.divBottom | model.divTop

*Members* argument | byline | dateline | docAuthor | docDate | epigraph | salute

---

**model.egLike** groups elements containing examples or illustrations. [22.1.1.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* cit | model.inter

*Members* eg

---

**model.emphLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.highlighted | model.limitedPhrase

*Members* code | emph | foreign | gloss | ident | mentioned | soCalled | term | title
model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside
<encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei
Used by encodingDesc
Members classDecl editorialDecl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl

model.frontPart groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front
or back matter. [7.1]

Module tei
Used by back front
Members model.frontPart.drama divGen titlePage

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3]

Module tei
Used by address argument back bibl body byline cit closer date dateline div docImprint
docTitle epigraph figure front group head ig list macro paraContent macro.phraseSeq
macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara opener postscript s sp table text time
titlePage trailer w
Members model.global.edit [gap] model.global.meta [index interp interpGrp]
model.milestoneLike [anchor lb milestone pb] model.noteLike [note figure]

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically
editorial function. [1.3]

Module tei
Used by model.global
Members gap

model.global.meta groups globally available elements which describe the status of
other elements. [1.3]

Module tei
Used by model.global
Members index interp interpGrp

Note Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract
interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient
to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same
divison as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their
own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

model.glossLike groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or
description for any markup construct.
model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.9]  

Module tei  
Used by category taxonomy  
Members gloss

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.  

Module tei  
Used by argument divGen figure listBibl model.divTopPart table  
Members head

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3]  

Module tei  
Used by formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase w  
Members hi

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3]  

Module tei  
Used by bibl model.phrase  
Members model.emphLike code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title model.hiLike hi

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.11]  

Module tei  
Used by model.biblPart  
Members biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3]  

Module tei  
Used by head trailer macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common

201
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

**model.lLike** groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

*Module* tei

*Used by* head lg model.divPart sp trailer

*Members* desc label

**model.labelLike** groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

*Module* tei

*Used by* lg model.inter

*Members* desc label

**model.limitedPhrase** groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. ]

*Module* tei

*Used by* catDesc creation macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited

*Members* model.emphLike code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title model.hlLike hi model.pPart.data model.addressLike address model.dateLike date time model.measureLike num model.nameLike model.nameLike.agent name model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike model.placeNamePart idno rs model.pPart.editorial abbr choice expan model.pPart.msdesc model.phrase.xml att gi val model.ptrLike ptr ref

**model.listLike** groups list-like elements. [3.7. ]

*Module* tei

*Used by* back model.inter sourceDesc sp

*Members* list table

**model.measureLike** groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.5.3. ]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.pPart.data

*Members* num

**model.milestoneLike** groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. 3.10.3. ]

*Module* tei

*Used by* listBibl model.global

*Members* anchor lb milestone pb
model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module: tei

Used by: model.addrPart, model.pPart.data

Members: model.nameLike.agent, model.nameLike.agent.name, model.offsetLike

Note: A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies.

Module: tei

Used by: model.nameLike, respStmt

Members: name

Note: This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements.

Module: tei

Used by: model.global, notesStmt

Members: note

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.

Module: tei

Used by: availability, back, editionStmt, editorialDecl, encodingDesc, front, model.divPartDecl, projectDesc, publicationStmt, refsDecl, samplingDecl, seriesStmt, sourceDesc, sp

Members: p

model.pLike.front groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter.

Module: tei

Used by: back, front

Members: argument, byline, docAuthor, docDate, docEdition, docImprint, docTitle, epigraph, head, titlePart

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data.

Module: tei

Used by: bibl, model.limitedPhrase, model.phrase
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription.  [3.4.]

Module tei
Used by bibl model.phrase pc w
Members model.pPart.editorial[abbr choice expan] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr del orig reg sic unclear]

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring.  [3.4.]

Module tei
Used by model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit
Members abbr choice expan

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials.  [3.4.]

Module tei
Used by model.pPart.edit
Members add corr del orig reg sic unclear

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases.  [1.3.]

Module tei
Used by byline closer date dateline docImprint head macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara opener time trailer
Members model.graphicLike[formula graphic] model.highlighted model.emphLike[code emph foreign gloss ident mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike[hi] model.IPart model.pPart.data model.addressLike[address] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[num] model.nameLike model.nameLike.agent name model.offsetLike model.placeStateLike model.placeNamePart[ idno rs]

Note This class of elements can occur only within larger elements of the class inter or chunk. In prose, this means these elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.
**model.phrase.xml** groups phrase-level elements used to encode XML constructs such as element names, attribute names, and attribute values [22.]

*Module* tei  
*Used by* model.limitedPhrase model.phrase  
*Members* att gi val

**model.placeStateLike** groups elements which describe changing states of a place.

*Module* tei  
*Used by* model.nameLike  
*Members* model.placeNamePart

**model.profileDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside `<profileDesc>` and appear multiple times.

*Module* tei  
*Used by* profileDesc  
*Members* creation langUsage textClass

**model.ptrLike** groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.6.]

*Module* tei  
*Used by* bibl cit model.limitedPhrase model.phrase relatedItem  
*Members* ptr ref

**model.publicationStmtPart.agency** groups the child elements of a `<publicationStmt>` element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. [2.2.4.]

*Module* tei  
*Used by* publicationStmt  
*Members* authority distributor publisher  
*Note* The agency child elements, while not required, are required if one of the detail child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a detail child element without a preceding agency child element. See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail.

**model.publicationStmtPart.detail** groups the agency-specific child elements of the `<publicationStmt>` element of the TEI header. [2.2.4.]

*Module* tei  
*Used by* publicationStmt  
*Members* address availability date idno pubPlace  
*Note* A detail child element may not occur unless an agency child element precedes it. See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

**model.qLike** groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [3.3.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* cit model.inter sp

*Members* model.quoteLike cit q

**model.quoteLike** groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.qLike

*Members* cit

**model.respLike** groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

*Module* tei

*Used by* editionStmt model.biblPart titleStmt

*Members* author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor

**model.segLike** groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. 17.1.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl model.phrase

*Members* pc s seg w

*Note* The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the `<segmentation>` element of the `<encodingDesc>` within the associated TEI header.

**model.stageLike** groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [7.3.]

*Module* tei

*Used by* lg model.inter sp

*Members* stage

*Note* Stage directions are members of class inter: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

**model.teiHeaderPart** groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.

*Module* tei

*Used by* teiHeader

*Members* encodingDesc profileDesc
model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as `<docTitle>`, `<docAuthor>`, `<docImprint>`, or `<epigraph>`. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by titlePage

Members `argument` `byline` `docAuthor` `docDate` `docEdition` `docImprint` `docTitle` `epigraph` `graphic` `imprimatur` `titlePart`

A.3 Attribute classes

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [3.3.3. 8.3.]

Module tei

Members `change` `q` `sp` `stage`

Attributes Attributes

`@who` indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (`<sp>`) in the body of the play are linked to `<castItem>` elements in the `<castList>` using the `who` attribute. `<castItem type="role"> <role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role> </castItem>`

`<castItem type="role"> <role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role> <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc> </castItem>`

`<!-- ... -->`

`<sp who="#Barnardo"> <speaker>Bernardo</speaker> <l n="1">Who's there?!</l> </sp>`

`<sp who="#Francisco"> <speaker>Francisco</speaker> <l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l> </sp>`

Note For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified `<person>` element.

att.breaking provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.10.3.]

Module tei

Members `ll` `milestone` `pb`

Attributes Attributes

`@break` indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.
**att.cReferencing** provides an attribute which may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

**Module** tei

**Members** gloss ptr ref term

**Attributes**

@cRef (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a `<refsDecl>` element in the TEI header.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** data.text

**Note** The value of `cRef` should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5.) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target. The `<refsDecl>` to use may be indicated with the `decls` attribute.

Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given `<ptr/>` element.

---

**att.canonical** provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

**Module** tei

**Members** att.naming att.personal name author editor pubPlace rs docAuthor docTitle funder principal resp respStmt sponsor term title

**Attributes**

@key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** data.text

```xml
<author>
  <name key="name 427308"
```
typetype="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative
Council]</name>
</author>
<author>
  <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"
    ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name>
</author>

Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or
any other externally-defined string identifying the
referent. No particular syntax is proposed for the values of
the key attribute, since its form will depend entirely on
practice within a given project. For the same reason, this
attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since
there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one
project are distinct from those used by another. In such a
situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which
follows standard practice on the Web is to use a ref
attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.

@ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the
entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by
whitespace

<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"
type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements
or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated
by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication
is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

att.citing provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being
cited. [1.3.1]

Module tei

Members biblScope

Attributes Attributes

@unit identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns,
pages, volume.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: volume the element contains a volume
number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue
numbers.

page the element contains a page number or page range.

line the element contains a line number or line range.

chapter the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or
title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

column the element identifies a column.

@from specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the unit
attribute.
att.dataable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.5.4. 13.3.6. ]

Module tei

Members change creation date licence name resp time

Attributes Attributes att.dataable.w3c (@when)

@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]">  
<sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0">@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert></sch:rule>

He was born on <date calendar="#Gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date>  
(<date calendar="#Julian" when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date> ).

@period supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Note This superclass provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.dataable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.dataable.iso and att.dataable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

att.dataable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

Module tei

Members att.dataable change creation date licence name resp time

Attributes Attributes @when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.w3c
Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats. 

```xml
<p>
<date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
<date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
<time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
<date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
<date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
<date when="---01">the first of the month</date>
<date when="--08">August</date>
<date when="2006">MMVI</date>
<date when="0056">AD 56</date>
<date when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>
```

This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the <date calendar="#Julian" when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.

```xml
<opener>
<dateline>
<placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
<date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
</dateline>
</opener>
<salute>To Mrs. Cornell, </salute> Sunday <time when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>
```

---

**att.datcat** provides the *dcr:datcat* and *dcr:ValueDatcat* attributes which are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOCat at [http://www.isocat.org/][9.5.2. 18.3.]

**Module** tei

**Members** att.segLike[pc s seg w]

**Attributes** Attributes

- **@datcat** contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of [data.pointer](#) separated by whitespace

- **@valueDatcat** contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of [data.pointer](#) separated by whitespace

**Example** In this example *dcr:datcat* relates the feature name to the data category *partOfSpeech* and *dcr:ValueDatcat* the feature value to the data category *commonNoun*. Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at [www.isocat.org/](http://www.isocat.org/) which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.
Note ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Peristent IDentifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at http://www.isocat.org/12620/), which provides two attributes, dcr:datcat and dcr:valueDatcat.

**att.declarable** provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose decls attribute. [15.3.]

**Module** tei

**Members** availability bibl editorialDecl langUsage listBibl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl sourceDesc textClass

**Attributes**

- **@default** indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** data.truthValue
  - **Legal values are:**
    - true This element is selected if its parent is selected
    - false This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]

*Note* The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Only one element of a particular type may have a default attribute with a value of true.

**att.declaring** provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [15.3.]

**Module** tei

**Members** back body div front gloss graphic group lg p ptr ref term text

**Attributes**

- **@decls** identifies one or more declarable elements within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace
att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

Module tei

Members att.editLike[att.transcriptional|add del|corr|date|expan|gap|name|reg|time|unclear]

Attributes

att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)

@unit names the unit used for the measurement

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: cm (centimetres)

mm (millimetres)

in (inches)

lines lines of text

chars (characters) characters of text

@quantity specifies the length in the units specified

Datatype data.numeric

@extent indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

Datatype data.text

@gap extent="5 words"/

@height extent="half the page"/

@precision characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.

Datatype data.certainty

@scope where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: all measurement applies to all instances.

most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.

range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4.1]

Module tei

Members div|lg

Attributes

att.fragmentable (@part)

@org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.

Status Optional
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: composite no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.

uniform the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence. [Default]

@sample indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: initial division lacks material present at end in source.

medial division lacks material at start and end.

final division lacks material at start.

unknown position of sampled material within original unknown.

complete division is not a sample. [Default]

---

`att.docStatus` provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

Module tei

Members bibl change revisionDesc

Attributes

@status describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: approved

candidate
cleared
deprecated
draft [Default]
embargoed
expired
frozen
galley
proposed
published
recommendation
submitted
unfinished
withdrawn

Example

```xml
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change when="2010-10-21"
    status="published"/>
</revisionDesc>
```
att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [3.4, 10.3.1, 13.3.2, 11.3.1.1]

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional [add, del, corr, date, expan, gap, name, reg, time, unclear]

Attributes

- att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)
- att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)
- att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.source (@source)
- @evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: internal there is internal evidence to support the intervention.

external there is external evidence to support the intervention.

conjecture the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

@instant indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.

Status Optional

Datatype data.xTruthValue

Default false

Note The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

Note Each pointer on the source (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

Module tei

Members lb, milestone, pb

Attributes

- @ed (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.word separated by whitespace

@edRef (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Example

<listBibl>
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>, <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>, <date>1937</date>
  </bibl>
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>, <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>
  </bibl>
</listBibl>

Example

Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their strength maintaining the essentials of their ancient culture, still living their personal lives in zest and endless novelty of action, … I saw myself still preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid consciousness;

att.fragmentable groups structural elements which may be fragmented, usually as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

Module tei

Members att.divLike\[div \[lg\] \att.segLike\[pc \[seg w\] \li p\]

Attributes

@part specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: Y (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect
N (no) either the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness. [Default]

I (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element

M (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element

F (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

*Note* The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

**att.global** provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

**Module** tei

**Members**

- TEI
- abbr
- add
- addrLine
- address
- anchor
- argument
- att
- author
- authority
- availability
- back
- bibl
- biblScope
- body
- byline
- catDesc
- catRef
- category
- cell
- change
- choice
- classCode
- classDecl
- closer
- code
- corr
- creation
- date
- dateline
- del
- desc
- div
- divGen
- docAuthor
- docDate
- docEdition
- docImprint
- docTitle
- edition
- editionStmt
- editor
- editorialDecl
- emph
- encodingDesc
- epigraph
- expan
- extent
- figDesc
- figure
- fileDesc
- foreign
- formula
- front
- funder
- gap
- gi
- gloss
- graphic
- group
- head
- hi
- ident
- idno
- imprimatur
- index
- interp
- interpGrp
- item
- keywords
- l
- label
- langUsage
- language
- lb
- lg
- licence
- list
- listBibl
- mentioned
- milestone
- name
- note
- notesStmt
- num
- opener
- orig
- p
- pb
- pc
- postscript
- principal
- profileDesc
- projectDesc
- ptr
- pubPlace
- publicationStmt
- publisher
- q
- ref
- refsDecl
- reg
- resp
- respStmt
- revisionDesc
- row
- rs
- salute
- samplingDecl
- seg
- seriesStmt
- sic
- signed
- soCalled
- sourceDesc
- sp
- speaker
- sponsor
- stage
- table
- taxonomy
telCorpus
telHeader
term
text
textClass
time
title
- titlePage
- titlePart
- titleStmt
- trailer
- unclear
- val
- w

**Attributes**

- **att.global.linking** (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- **att.global.analytic** (@ana)
- **att.global.facs** (@facs)
- @xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.
  
  **Status** Optional
  
  **Datatype** [xsd:ID]

  **Note** The xml:id attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.10.

- @n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.
  
  **Status** Optional
  
  **Datatype** [data.text]

  **Note** The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

- @xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a tag generated according to [BCP 47] .
  
  **Status** Optional
  
  **Datatype** [data.language]

  <p> The consequences of this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last ariki </p> or chief
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

(Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to ancestral territorial organization.

Note The xml:lang value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify xml:lang at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the teiHeader from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages. The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its ident attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

rend (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.word separated by whitespace

Note These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the rend attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the rend attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace.

xml:space signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: default signals that the application’s default white-space processing modes are acceptable

preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

Note The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.
att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Members att.global[TEI abbr add addrLine address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibi bibiScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expand extent figDesc figure fileDesc foreign formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langUsage language lb li list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear val w

Attributes Attributes

@ana (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the ana attribute appears.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Note When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

att.global.facs groups elements corresponding with all or part of an image, because they contain an alternative representation of it, typically but not necessarily a transcription of it. [11.1.]

Module transcr

Members att.global[TEI abbr add addrLine address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibi bibiScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expand extent figDesc figure fileDesc foreign formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langUsage language lb li list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pc postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refsDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear val w

Attributes Attributes

@facs (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.

Status Optional
att.global.linking defines a set of attributes for hypertextual linking.

Module linking

Members att.global TEI abbr add addrLine address anchor argument att author authority availability back bibl biblScope body byline catDesc catRef category cell change choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle editionStmt editor editorialDecl eg emph encodingDesc epigraph expan extent figDesc figure fileDesc formula front funder gap gi gloss graphic group head hi ident idno imprimatur index interp interpGrp item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl mentioned milestone name note notesStmt num opener orig p pb pe postscript principal profileDesc projectDesc ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q ref refDecl reg relatedItem resp respStmt revisionDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt sic signed soCalled sourceDesc sp speaker sponsor stage table taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear val w

Attributes Attributes

@corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of [data.pointer] separated by whitespace

In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using corresp. The language is indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the corresp and the tag pointed to by the corresp inherit the value from their immediate parent.

<!-- In a placeography --><place xml:id="LOND1"
corresp="#LOND2 #GENI1">
att.interpLike

<placeName>London</placeName>
<desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>

<!— In a literary personography -->

<person xml:id="LOND2"
corresp="#LOND1 #GENI1">
<persName type="lit">London</persName>
<note>
<p>Allegorical character representing the city of London's Genius. Appears as an allegorical character in mayoral shows.
</p>
</note>
</person>

<person xml:id="GENI1"
corresp="#LOND1 #LOND2">
<persName type="lit">London's Genius</persName>
<note>
<p>Personification of London's genius. Appears as an allegorical character in mayoral shows.
</p>
</note>
</person>

In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

@next points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
Status Optional
Datatype data.pointer

@prev (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
Status Optional
Datatype data.pointer

att.interpLike provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation. [17.2, ]

Module tei
Members interp interpGrp
Attributes Attributes att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.source (@source)
@type indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.
Status Recommended
Datatype data.enumerated
Sample values include: image identifies an image in the passage.

character identifies a character associated with the passage.

theme identifies a theme in the passage.

allusion identifies an allusion to another text.

@inst (instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.
Status Optional
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of \texttt{data.pointer} separated by whitespace

\textit{Note} The current element should be an analytic one. The element pointed at should be a textual one.

---

\texttt{att.media} provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

\textit{Module} \texttt{tei}

\textit{Members} \texttt{graphic}

\textit{Attributes} Attributes

- \texttt{@width} Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width  
  \textit{Status} Optional
  \textit{Datatype} \texttt{data.outputMeasurement}

- \texttt{@height} Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height  
  \textit{Status} Optional
  \textit{Datatype} \texttt{data.outputMeasurement}

- \texttt{@scale} Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size  
  \textit{Status} Optional
  \textit{Datatype} \texttt{data.numeric}

---

\texttt{att.milestoneUnit} provides an attribute to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone.  

\textit{Module} \texttt{core}

\textit{Members} \texttt{milestone}

\textit{Attributes} Attributes

- \texttt{@unit} provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.  
  \textit{Status} Required
  \textit{Datatype} \texttt{data.enumerated}

  \textit{Suggested values include:} \texttt{page} physical page breaks (synonymous with the \texttt{<pb/>} element).  
  \texttt{column} column breaks.  
  \texttt{line} line breaks (synonymous with the \texttt{<lb/>} element).  
  \texttt{book} any units termed book, liber, etc.  
  \texttt{poem} individual poems in a collection.  
  \texttt{canto} cantos or other major sections of a poem.  
  \texttt{speaker} changes of speaker or narrator.  
  \texttt{stanza} stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.  
  \texttt{act} acts within a play.  
  \texttt{scene} scenes within a play or act.  
  \texttt{section} sections of any kind.  
  \texttt{absent} passages not present in the reference edition.
unnumbered passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

```xml
<milestone n="23"
   ed="La"
   unit="Dreissiger"/>
...
<milestone n="24"
   ed="AV"
   unit="verse"/>
```

**Note** If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of `unit`. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next `<milestone/>` tag for the edition in question is encountered. In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g., *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

---

**att.naming** provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.5.1 | 13.3.5 | ]

**Module** tei

**Members** *att.personal*[name] author editor pubPlace rs

**Attributes**

- `att.canonical` (@key, @ref)

  `@role` may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

  **Status** Optional

  **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

- `@nymRef` (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

  **Status** Optional

  **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

  **Note** The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

---

**att.personal** (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1 | ]

**Module** tei

**Members** *name*

**Attributes**

- `att.naming` (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

  `@full` indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

  **Status** Optional

  **Datatype** `data.enumerated`
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Legal values are: yes the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]

abb (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.

init (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

@sort specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.

Status Optional

Datatype \texttt{data.count}

\texttt{att.placement} provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. \cite{3.4.3, 11.3.1.4}

\textit{Module} tei

\textit{Members} \texttt{add figure label note stage}

\textit{Attributes} Attributes

@place specifies where this item is placed

\textit{Status} Recommended

\textit{Datatype} 1–∞ occurrences of \texttt{data.enumerated} separated by whitespace

\textit{Suggested values include:} below below the line

bottom at the foot of the page

margin in the margin (left, right, or both)

top at the top of the page

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

overleaf on the other side of the leaf

above above the line

der at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

inline within the body of the text.

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

<\texttt{add place="margin"}>[An addition written in the margin]\texttt{<add>}

<\texttt{add place="bottom opposite"}>[An addition written at the foot of the current page and also on the facing page]\texttt{<add>}

<\texttt{note place="bottom"}>Ibid, p.7</\texttt{note}>

\texttt{att.pointing} defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. \cite{1.3.1.1.2, 3.6}

\textit{Module} tei

\textit{Members} \texttt{catRef gloss licence note ptr ref term}

\textit{Attributes} Attributes

@\texttt{targetLang} specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by \texttt{target}, using a language tag generated according to BCP 47.

\textit{Status} Optional

\textit{Datatype} \texttt{data.language}
Schematron

```xml
<sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]">
   <sch:assert test="count(@target)"/>
   @targetLang can only be used if @target is specified.</sch:assert></sch:rule>
```

In the example above, the `<linkGrp>` combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

*Note* The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its `ident` attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

@evaluate specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** `data.enumerated`

*Legal values are:* all if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer’s target.

*Note* If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

**att.ranging** provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

*Module* tei
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Members

\[\text{att.dimensions} \text{[att.editLike[att.transcriptional]add del corr date expan gap name reg time unclear]] num}\]

Attributes

- @atLeast gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.
  - Status: Optional
  - Datatype: data.numeric

- @atMost gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.
  - Status: Optional
  - Datatype: data.numeric

- @min where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.
  - Status: Optional
  - Datatype: data.numeric

- @max where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.
  - Status: Optional
  - Datatype: data.numeric

- @confidence specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by min and max, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.
  - Status: Optional
  - Datatype: data.probability

Example

The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike"> <gap reason="illegible" extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/> </del> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

Module tei

Members

- graphic

Attributes

- @url (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.
  - Status: Required
  - Datatype: data.pointer

att.responsibility provides attributes indicating who is responsible for something asserted by the markup and the degree of certainty associated with it. [3.4. 17.3. 13.1.1. ]

Module tei

Members

- att.editLike
- att.transcriptional
- add del corr date expan gap name reg time unclear
- att.interpLike
- interp interpGrp abbr note orig rs seg sic
Attributes Attributes att.source (@source)
  @cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.
  Status Optional
  Datatype data.certainty
  @resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.
  Status Optional
  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Example

Blessed are the
  <choice>
  <sic>placemakers</sic>
  <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr>
  </choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3, 17.1]

Module tei
Members pc s seg w
Attributes Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat) att.fragmentable (@part)
  @function characterizes the function of the segment.
  Status Optional
  Datatype data.enumerated

Note Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [9.1]

Module tei
Members bibl idno item list listBibl term
Attributes Attributes @sortKey supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.
  Status Optional
  Datatype data.word

David’s other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES">
  <term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
  </index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was
David’s own first cousin.

Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produce the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent. Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for 4-H will often appear alphabetized under fourth, and McCoy may be alphabetized under maccy, while A1, A4, and A5 may all appear in numeric order alphabetized between a- and AA. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

att.source provides attributes for pointing to the source of a bibliographic reference.

Module tei

Members att.responsibility, att.editLike, att.transcriptional, add, del, corr, date, expan, gap, name, reg, time, unclear, att.interpLike, interp, interpGrp, abbr, note, orig, rs, seg, sic

Attributes

@source provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Example

```
<![...-->
As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>) tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">’Collaboration’ is a problematic and should be a contested term.</quote>
</![...-->
```

Example

```
<p>
<![...-->
<quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we seem to know.</quote>
<![...-->
</p>
<p>
<![...-->
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
<title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,
<pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>:
<publisher>University of Chicago Press</publisher>
(</date>2003</date>),
<biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>.
</bibl>
```

228
**att.spanning** provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [1.3.1]

**Module** tei

**Members** index lb milestone pb

**Attributes**

- **@spanTo** indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** `data.pointer`
  - **Schematron** The `@spanTo` attribute must point to an element following the current element. <sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]">
    <sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by `@spanTo` (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/></sch:assert></sch:rule>

  - **Note** The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the `spanTo` attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

**att.tableDecoration** provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table.

**Module** tei

**Members** cell row

**Attributes**

- **@role** indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** `data.enumerated`
  - **Suggested values include:** `label` labelling or descriptive information only.
  - `data` data values. [Default]

  - **Note** When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the `role` attribute of the parent `<row>` element.

- **@rows** indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** `data.count`
  - **Default** 1

  - **Note** A value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several rows. Where several cells span multiple rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

- **@cols** (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.
  - **Status** Optional
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

**data.count**

Datatype: data.count
Default: 1

Note: A value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns. Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

---

**att.transcriptional** provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources.

[11.3.1.4.]

**Module** tei

**Members** add, del

**Attributes**

- `att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)`
- `att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)`
- `att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)`
- `att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`
- `att.source (@source)`

@hand indicates the hand of the agent which made the intervention.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** data.pointer

@status indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** data.enumerated

Sample values include:

- **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.
- **duplicate-partial** part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original
- **excessStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.
- **excessEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.
- **shortStart** some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
- **shortEnd** some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
- **partial** some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
- **unremarkable** the deletion is not faulty. [Default]

Note: Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common. Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

@cause documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

**Status** Optional

230
att.translatable provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

Module tei

Members desc gloss

Attributes

@versionDate specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.w3c

Note The versionDate attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the versionDate value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made.

att.typed provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way.

Module tei

Members add anchor bibl change cit corr date del desc div figure gloss group head ident label lb lg listBibl milestone name note pb pc ptr ref reg relatedItem rs s seg term text time trailer w

Attributes

@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

```xml
<div type="verse">
  <head>Night in Tarras</head>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
    <l>... </l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="stanza">
    <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
    <l>... </l>
  </lg>
</div>
```
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Note The type attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of \texttt{att.typed}, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

\texttt{@subtype} provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

\textit{Status} Optional

\textit{Datatype} \texttt{data.enumerated}

\textit{Note} The \texttt{subtype} attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its \texttt{type} attribute.

\texttt{Schematron} <sch:rule context="*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test=">The \texttt{<sch:name/>} element should not be categorized in detail with \texttt{@subtype} unless also categorized in general with \texttt{@type}</sch:assert></sch:rule>

\textit{Note} When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the \texttt{<valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.4.}

A.4 Macros

\textbf{data.certainty} defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

\textit{Module} tei

\textit{Used by}

\textit{Declaration} \texttt{data.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"}

\textit{Note} Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. For more precise indication, \texttt{data.probability} may be used instead or in addition.

\textbf{data.count} defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

\textit{Module} tei

\textit{Used by}

\textit{Element:}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{table/@rows}
  \item \texttt{table/@cols}
\end{itemize}

\textit{Declaration} \texttt{data.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger}

\textit{Note} Only positive integer values (including zero) are permitted

\textbf{data.duration.iso} defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats

\textit{Module} tei

\textit{Used by}

\textit{Declaration}
**data.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

**Module** tei

**Used by**

**Declaration**

```xml
data.duration.w3c = xsd:duration
```

**Example**

```xml
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
```

**Example**

```xml
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

**Example**

```xml
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
```

**Example**

```xml
<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

---

**Note** A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first time number-letter pair. For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times.*
the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first time number-letter pair. For complete details, see the W3C specification.

data.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

Module tei

Used by Element:
- abbr/@type
- att/@scheme
- availability/@status
- biblScope/@type
- divGen/@type
- formula/@notation
- gap/@agent
- gi/@scheme
- idno/@type
- list/@type
- num/@type
- pc/@force
- pc/@unit
- q/@type
- stage/@type
- teiHeader/@type
- title/@type
- title/@level
- titlePage/@type
- titlePart/@type
- unclear/@agent

Declaration data.enumerated = data.name

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element.

data.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1]
Declaration  
\[
data\text{.language} = \text{xsd:language} \mid ""
\]

Note The values for this attribute are language tags as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 4646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice. A language tag, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or subtags separated by the hyphen character (\(-\), U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

**language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at [http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry](http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry). It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

**script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at [http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html](http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html). The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

**region** Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g., UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case. The list of codes can be found at [http://www.iso.org/iso/home/standards/country_codes/iso-3166-1_decoding_table.htm](http://www.iso.org/iso/home/standards/country_codes/iso-3166-1_decoding_table.htm). The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at [http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm](http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm).

**variant** An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.

**extension** An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

**private use** An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter \(x\) (i.e., starts with \(x\)-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding `<language>` element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been grandfathered from previous specifications. Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with \(x\)-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding `<language>` element in the TEI header.
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Examples include

- **sn** Shona
- **zh-TW** Taiwanese
- **zh-Hant-HK** Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong
- **en-SL** English as spoken in Sierra Leone
- **pl** Polish
- **es-MX** Spanish as spoken in Mexico
- **es-419** Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, *Language tags in HTML and XML*.

---

**data.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

*Module* tei

*Used by* **att** data.enumerated **gi** Element:

- **index**/@indexName

*Declaration* **data.name = xsd:Name**

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see [http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name](http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name)): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

---

**data.namespace** defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Declaration* **data.namespace = xsd:anyURI**

*Note* The range of syntactically valid values is defined by [RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax](https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3986).

---

**data.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- **num**/@value

*Declaration* **data.numeric = xsd:double | xsd:decimal**

*Note* Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio. To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, **E** notation, a variant of exponential notation, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter **E**. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the
second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by $10^n$ the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.

A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

data.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

```
data.outputMeasurement =
  token
  {{
    pattern = "\[-+]?\d+(\.(\d+))?%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm"}
  }
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath, all on a white background.</figDesc>
  <graphic height="600px" width="600px"
      url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/>
</figure>
```

Note These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

data.pattern (regular expression pattern) defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

```
data.pattern = token
```

Note A regular expression, often called a pattern, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings Handel, Händel, and Haendel can be described by the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel matches each of the three strings).
**data.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

*Module* tei  
*Used by* Element:  
- `catRef/@scheme`  
- `change/@target`  
- `classCode/@scheme`  
- `gap/@hand`  
- `keywords/@scheme`  
- `note/@targetEnd`  
- `relatedItem/@target`  
- `unclear/@hand`  
- `w/@lemmaRef`

*Declaration*  
`data.pointer = xsd:anyURI`


---

**data.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

*Module* tei  
*Used by*  
*Declaration*  
`data.probability = xsd:double { minInclusive = "0" maxInclusive = "1" }`

*Note* Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

---

**data.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

*Module* tei  
*Used by*  
*Declaration*  
`data.replacement = text`

---

**data.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.

*Module* tei
**data.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- `w/@lemma`

*Declaration* `data.text = string`

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single token in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

**data.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- `note/@anchored`
- `pc/@pre`

*Declaration* `data.truthValue = xsd:boolean`

*Note* The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false. This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: `data.xTruthValue`.

**data.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- `teiCorpus/@version`
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

Declaration

```
data.version = token { pattern = "\[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }
```

Note The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (http://unicode.org/versions/). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

---

data.versionNumber defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

```
data.versionNumber =
  token { pattern = "\[\d]+[a-z]*\[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*\[\d]*){0,3}" }
```

---

data.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- code/@lang
- gap/@reason
- unclear/@reason

Declaration

```
data.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

---

data.xTruthValue (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

```
data.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"
```

Note In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruhValue.

---

data.xmlName defines attribute values which contain an XML name.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

```
data.xmlName = xsd:NCName
```
macro.anyXML defines a content model within which any XML elements are permitted

Module tagdocs

Used by macro.anyXML

Declaration

```
macro.anyXML = newline
element * - (tei:* | teix:egXML)newline
{newline
  attribute * { text }*,newline
  ( text | macro.anyXML )*newline
}
```

macrolimitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by desc figDesc

Declaration

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*
```

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by add corr del docEdition emph hi imprimitur orig p ref reg salute seg sic signed title titlePart unclear

Declaration

```
macro.paraContent = newline
( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global | lg )*
```

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1.]

Module tei

Used by abbr addrLine author biblScope distributor docAuthor docDate edition editor eg expan extent foreign gloss label mentioned name num pubPlace publisher rs soCalled speaker term

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

241
A LIST OF ELEMENTS DESCRIBED

**macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1]

**Module** tei

**Used by** authority classCode funder language principal resp sponsor

**Declaration**

```plaintext
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )* 
```

**macro.specialPara** ('special’ paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3]

**Module** tei

**Used by** cell change item licence note q stage

**Declaration**

```plaintext
macro.specialPara =
newline
(newline
text
newline
| model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.divPart | model.global)
```